

# **UNIT II**

## **ANALYSIS ARGUMENTATIVE COMPOSITION WRITING**

## WHAT IS AN ANALYSIS ARGUMENTATIVE COMPOSITION ?

### ลักษณะสำคัญ\* :

เป็นการเขียนหรือการพูดเพื่อแสดงเหตุผลต่อปัญหา ชูประเด็นสำคัญที่ตนเชื่อ มาตอบโต้ หรือโต้แย้ง แนวทางการเสนอความคิดก่อปรด้วยเหตุและผล (logical thought)

วิธีตอบโต้และโต้แย้งนั้น อรรถาธิบายให้เห็นกระจ่างชัดว่า

สิ่งนั้นเกิดขึ้นได้อย่างไร (how something done or made)

ทำไมมันจึงเกิดขึ้นเช่นนั้น (why it occurs or happens)

มีวิธีอื่นใดอีกไหมที่จะทำสิ่งนั้นสิ่งนี้ได้ (different ways of doing something)

---

\* เป็นลักษณะเดียวกับ Analysis Argumentative Paragraph Writing - โปรดย้อนไป  
อ่านใน PART ONE UNIT II

**ASSIGNMENT 1**

**Directions :** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. “Why People Migrate from the Country to the City”

***It is more practical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.***

***Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***

## ทำเรื่องสำคัญก่อนลงมือเขียน

**1. ตีความหัวข้อ :** ทำไมคนจึงอพยพจากชนบทเข้าไปในเมืองใหญ่ มีสาเหตุมาจากอะไรเขาจึงไม่ทำมาหากินอยู่บ้านนอก ที่เขาย้ายไปเมืองใหญ่เขาต้องการอะไรบ้างที่บ้านนอกไม่มี

**2. แยกแยะเหตุผล :** เขาไม่อยู่บ้านนอกเพราะ - ไม่มีงานทำ มีงานไม่ดี มีโอกาสเลือกได้น้อย สังคมก็คับแคบ รู้จักกันไปหมด ไม่มีเสรีภาพของตัวเอง อยู่ในกรอบประเพณีเดิม ๆ ใครทำอะไรก็ล่วงรู้ซุบซิบนินทากันไปทั่ว โอกาสของการพัฒนาตัวเองทางด้านฝีมือ ทางการศึกษาก็ไม่มี สีสันบันเทิงก็ไม่มีอะไรชวนให้ชีวิตมีรสชาติ ย้ายเข้ากรุงดีกว่าเพราะมีทุกอย่าง ที่บ้านนอกไม่มีโอกาสชุดทอง โอกาสสร้างตัว สร้างครอบครัวในกรุงกว้างกว่า ดีกว่า อนาคตสดใส .... เป็นต้น

**3. รวมเหตุผลย่อยเป็นเหตุผลหลักเมื่อทำ outline :** ลองจับเหตุผลย่อยจัดเป็นหมวดหมู่ ทำเป็นเหตุผลหลักสัก 3 ประการ แล้ววางลงในรูปของ outline

ลงมือทำเอง ทำทุกขั้นตอน แล้วจะพบความจริง จะเห็นว่าที่คิดไม่เป็น คิดไม่ออกนั้น ไม่จริงเลย ทุกคนคิดเป็น และคิดดี คิดได้กว้างขวางรอบคอบ แต่ไม่ยอมตั้งหลักคิด โปรตตั้งสติ และลงมือขีดเขียน ความคิดที่ฟุ้งพรูออกมาเมื่อถูกบันทึกและอ่านพิจารณาใคร่ครวญหลายครั้ง มันสามารถจัดเข้าเป็นหมวดหมู่ได้ง่ายดาย แล้วท่านก็จะทำมันได้

ลงมือทำ outline เป็นไทยก่อนก็ได้ ไม่เสียหาย แล้วค่อยนำเอาความคิดนั้น ๆ มาจัดวางเป็น jotted outline หรือ sentence outline เป็นภาษาอังกฤษ การทำ outline เป็นภาษาอังกฤษ ก็ต้องรู้กลไก (mechanics) ในภาษาของเขา ทำมาก ๆ ก็จะเข้าใจ และเกิดความชำนาญไปเอง ผู้เขียนได้พยายามลงมือทำให้ดูพอเป็นแนวเทียบเพื่อเป็นตัวอย่างไว้พอสมควร อย่าพอใจที่ดูในตำรามิใช่เป็นของท่าน มันเป็นเพียงแนวคิดวิธีทำอีกอย่างหนึ่งเท่านั้น มิใช่ดีที่สุด ตัวท่านทำเองอาจจะดีกว่า ตรงใจท่านมากกว่า ต้องพยายามและยอมรับความจริง ดุจภาษิตที่ว่า



**“Rome was not built in a day.”**  
**(กรุงโรมมิได้สร้างเสร็จภายในวันเดียว)**

จงใช้พุทธธรรม “อิทธิบาท 4” - ฉันทะ (love), วิริยะ (try), จิตตะ (concern), และ  
 วิมังสา (critical and analitical procedure)

ทำอะไรจะเอาดีให้สำเร็จได้ จะต้องมีความรักความผูกพันกับสิ่งนั้น อย่าฝืนใจ  
 ทำ อย่าทำเพราะถูกบังคับ แต่ทำเพราะเห็นประโยชน์และความดีในสิ่งนั้น รัก ชอบ  
 เพียงอย่างเดียวก็ย่อมไม่สำเร็จ ต้องลงมือทำจริง ใ้ความพยายามให้สุดแรงเกิด (try  
 with your utmost) แม้จะใช้วิธี “ลองผิด-ลองถูก” (trial & error approach) บ้างใน  
 ตอนแรก ๆ นานเข้าก็จะพบความจริง และความถูกต้องมากขึ้น แม้จะลงมือทำได้ครบ  
 ทั้งสองประการ คือ “love-try” แล้ว ในบางภารกิจ (mission) ก็อาจยังไม่พบความ  
 สำเร็จ ต้องอาศัยธรรมะอีกสองประการ คือ ต้องมีจิตผูกพัน (จิตตะ) เอาใจใส่กับสิ่ง  
 นั้นอย่างจริงจังสม่ำเสมอ หายใจเข้าออกเป็นสิ่งนั้น เมื่อท่านพบสิ่งนั้น ถ้าฟังได้ - ให้  
 ฟัง อ่านได้ - ให้อ่าน ถามได้ - ให้ถาม เก็บรวบรวมได้ - ให้เก็บรวบรวม เกาะให้  
 ติดสถานการณ์นั้น (stick with it) ท่านก็จะเป็นคนมีข้อมูลข่าวสาร (data &  
 information) ในเรื่องนั้นมาก เพื่อจะได้นำมาประยุกต์กับธรรมะข้อที่ 4 - วิมังสา ก่อน  
 สรุปปรับรู้ เห็นด้วย ตัดสินใจ ควรจะต้องมีการใคร่ครวญพินิจพิเคราะห์ แยกแยะ  
 แจกแจง ตีติงทักท้วงทุกแง่ทุกมุมทั้งแง่บวกแง่ลบ (must be analyzed and criticized  
 thoroughly in every aspect) ถ้าท่านไม่เคยลอง ก็โปรดลองเดินตามพุทธธรรม -  
 อิทธิบาท 4 (law of achievement) ธรรมะแห่งความสำเร็จ ท่านจะประสบความสำเร็จ  
 แน่นนอน

จงพอใจในผลงานที่ท่านทำขึ้นเองก่อน และเพื่อความรอบคอบก็ควรศึกษา  
 เพิ่มเติม พิจารณาใคร่ครวญจากตัวอย่างที่ผู้เขียน สร้างขึ้นในตำรา  
 แล้วจงนำสิ่งที่ดีมีประโยชน์มาเพิ่มเติมในงานของท่าน  
 ค่อยทำไปแล้วจะดีขึ้นเอง

*Exercise Sheet : Assignment 1*

*The Jotted Outline :*

*Topic : “Why People Migrate from the Country to the City”*

*Exercise Sheet : Assignment 1*

*The Sentence Outline :*

*Topic : “Why People Migrate from the Country to the City”*

*Exercise Sheet : Assignment 1*

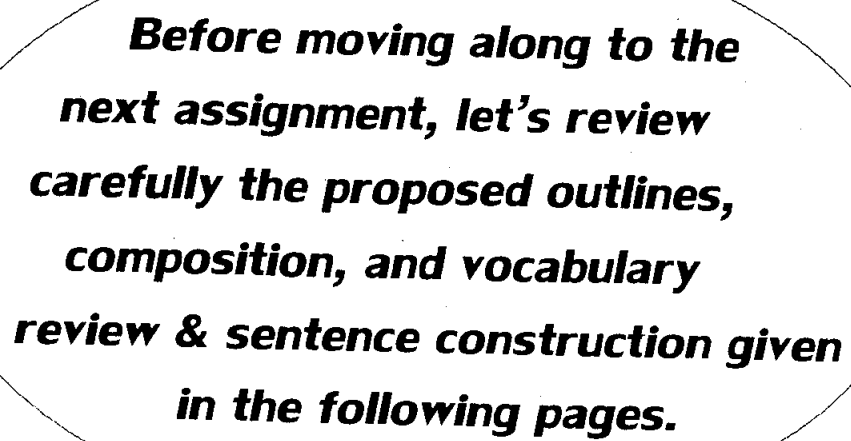
*The Complete Composition :*

*Topic : “Why People Migrate from the Country to the City”*

*Exercise Sheet : Assignment 1*

*The Complete Composition :*

*Topic : “Why People Migrate from the Country to the City”*



***Before moving along to the next assignment, let's review carefully the proposed outlines, composition, and vocabulary review & sentence construction given in the following pages.***

# The Jotted Outline

|  |
|--|
| <i>Why People Migrate from the Country to the City</i> |
|--|

## ***I. Thesis***

*Although there may be many reasons for leaving the country, three major ones are the search for employment, personal freedom, and excitement.*

## ***II. Employment***

- many villages have only farming, no industry
- nothing to do
- too much time
- no jobs present or future
- young leave, seeking opportunity
- more jobs
- migration to city for education
- return to village only to visit
- their children are city children

## ***III. Personal freedom***

- village life constricting
- western influences
- friends go

- social and family obligations in the village
- gossip and small town life
- position defined
- suffocating feeling

#### ***IV. Excitement***

- search for excitement
- no social activity
- life can get boring so the city pulls them
- social contact
- mental stimulation
- cultural, sports, educational
- spiritual activities

#### ***V. Conclusion***

***Peace, clean air, and easy lifestyle are not enough to keep people in villages. They move to urban centers seeking employment, personal freedom, and excitement.***



# The Sentence Outline

## *Why People Migrate from the Country to the City*

### **I. Thesis**

*Although there may be many reasons for leaving the country, three major ones are the search for employment, personal freedom, and excitement.*

### **II. They are searching for employment.**

#### **A. There is nothing much to do in the village all the year round.**

1. They only have farming but no other industry or business.
2. There is no present jobs and no hope and potential for the future jobs.

#### **B. Younger ones leave village to seek fortunes in the city.**

1. There are many more jobs, chances and opportunities in the city.
2. There are wider chance to elevate education and settle down in the city.

### **III. It is the need for personal freedom.**

#### **A. Family life and community life in the village is very constricting.**

1. The youngers are more and more opposed to western ways.
2. They are also influenced from friends who leave home to the city.

***B. There are many family obligations and moral restrictions.***

1. The neighbors are constantly watching each others and gossiping among themselves.
2. They feel closed in by the obligations, duties and pressures to conform.

***IV. The search for excitement is the other motive to leave village.***

***A. There is little social activity outside the family.***

1. Life can get pretty boring.
2. They are easily pulled to tempt the glamorous light and exciting of the city.

***B. In the city, there is much cultural stimulation.***

1. People can meet with different ways of thinking.
2. There are many places to go for entertainment and diversion.

***V. Conclusion :***

***Peace, clean air, and easy lifestyle are not enough to keep people in villages. They move to urban centers seeking employment, personal freedom, and excitement.***

### ***Why People Migrate from the Country to the City***

Most urbanites spend almost all of their time in the city, busy with their lives and occupations. They rarely leave. Sometimes, when they do, they feel a great relief and joy. It's quiet. They can breathe the air. The pace of life is slow and easy. And they might wonder why so many people who live there seem to want to leave. But those people living there all the time see it differently. ***Although there may be many reasons for leaving the village, three major ones are the search for employment, personal freedom and excitement.***

In many countries such as Thailand, a great number of villages have only farming as the major activity. There is no other industry or business. Much of the year, there is really nothing to do. Many people have energy and time, not only are there no present jobs but there is no hope and potential for the future. ***Many people, especially younger ones, educated and uneducated, leave their villages to seek their fortunes in the city.*** Of course it is easier for educated people to find work. But there are many more jobs, chances and opportunities in the towns even for less educated people. To remain in the village would be pointless. Those who wish to have a higher education must leave to continue studying in the city. And usually after completion of studies, there is no

chance at all to practise their profession in the villages. So they remain in the urban centers and return only to visit their families from time to time. Their children thus become city dwellers as well.

***Another important reason why people migrate, is the need for personal freedom.*** Family life and community life in the village is very constricting. More and more young people are exposed to western ways. They hear stories from their friends who leave and go to the city. In the village there are many family obligations and social restrictions. The neighbours are constantly watching each other and gossiping among themselves. There is no chance of anonymity. As well, everyone's position, in the community and the family, is clearly defined. The family has, for example, strong expectations of oldest sons or marriageable daughters. Many feel closed in or suffocated by the obligations, duties, and pressures to conform. And so they leave.

***As well as money and the need for freedom, the search for excitement is equally important as a motive for leaving the village.*** The village may be clean and peaceful and quiet, most of the time, but there is little social activity outside the family. Life can get pretty boring and the big city lights may appear glamorous and exciting. The city offers much contact with people from different regions and even countries.

There, people can meet with different ways of thinking. There is much cultural stimulation. There is music, art, film and dance. There are universities and libraries. And there are many places to go for entertainment and diversion where people can spend varying amounts of time and money. Most cities have a wide range of activities for all, from discos and roller skating arenas, to meditation and yoga classes.

So although village life offers much peace, clean air, and a slow, easy lifestyle, there are not enough things to keep young people there. ***More and more, there is a steady migration to urban centers of people who are seeking employment, personal freedom and excitement.***

## VOCABULARY REVIEW & SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

### Why People Migrate from the Country to the City

**activity** : (n) – the state of being active; movement, a thing to do or to be done (ภาวะความพร้อม, ความว่องไว, สิ่งที่ต้องทำ, กิจกรรม)

Ex:-->

1. Jane takes part in many school **activities**.
2. Classrooms **activities** are things done by pupils.

**air** : (n) – what we breathe; fresh air (สิ่งที่เราหายใจเข้าไป, อากาศ)

Ex:-->

1. **Air** is around us, but we cannot see it, smell it, or taste it.
2. Please open the window and let in some **air**.

**although** : (conj.) – even if; in spite of the fact (ถึงแม้ว่า, โดยความเป็นจริง)

Ex:-->

1. I will go, **although** I would rather stay home.
2. **Although** I ate a big dinner, I was hungry again very soon.

**among** : (preps) – surrounded by; in the middle of (ล้อมรอบ, ท่ามกลาง)

Ex:-->

1. A village is **among** the hills.
2. The campers pitched their tents **among** the trees.

**anonymity** : (n) – state of being unrecognised by others (สภาพที่ไม่ปรากฏนาม)

**anonymous** : (adj.) – without a name, or with a name that is not made known (ไม่มีชื่อ, มีชื่อแต่ยังไม่เป็นที่รู้จัก, นิรนาม)

**Ex:-->**

1. An **anonymous** gift, from somebody whose name is not known.
2. An author who remains **anonymous** does not reveal his name.

**appear** : (v) – come into view; become visible (ปรากฏแก่สายตา, ปรากฏตัว)

**Ex:-->**

1. When we reached the top of the hill, the town **appeared** below us.
2. The ship **appeared** on the horizon.

**arena** : (n) – a space that is used for sports contests or entertainment (สถานที่แสดงหรือแข่งขันกีฬา)

**Ex:-->**

1. In the **arenas** of ancient Rome, men fought with lions.
2. Today, circuses and sports events take place in **arenas**.

**art** : (n) – The works made by artists; paintings; drawings; the making or doing of anything that has beauty or meaning (งานที่สร้างสรรค์โดยจิตรกร, ภาพระบายสี, ภาพลายเส้น, สิ่งที่สร้างสรรค์เพื่อสื่อความงาม)

**Ex:-->**

1. We went to an exhibit of American Indian **art** at the museum.
2. Poetry, music and ballet dancing are **arts**.

**breathe** : (v) - take air into the lungs and send it out again  
(การหายใจเอาอากาศเข้าออกจากปอด)

**Ex:-->**

1. He was **breathing** hard when he finished the race.
2. He's still **breathing**, is still alive.

**busy** : (adj.) - full of activity (มีธุระยุ่ง)

**Ex:-->**

1. The airport is a **busy** place.
2. Today was a **busy** day.

**center** : (n) - main person, place, or thing (จุดศูนย์กลางของสถานที่, คน, สิ่งของ, จุดรวม)

**Ex:-->**

1. The new baby was the **center** of attention.
2. Chicago is a leading trade **center** of the United States.

**chance** : (n) - a good or favorable opportunity (โอกาสที่เหมาะสม, โอกาสดี)

**Ex:-->**

1. Now is your **chance** to escape.
2. She has a **chance** to visit Europe this summer.



**city** : (n) – a large area where many people live and work (เมืองใหญ่)

**Ex:-->**

1. A **city** is larger and more important than a town.
2. **Cities** have their own local government, which is usually headed by a mayor and a council.

**community** : (n) – a group of people who live together in the same place (ชุมชน)

**Ex:-->**

1. Our **community** voted to build a new library.
2. She lives in a rural **community** that is quite far away from the nearest city.

**conform** : (v) – to act or think in a way that agree with a rule or standard; obey (ทำตามหรือคล้อยตาม)

**Ex:-->**

1. New students were told that they must **conform** to the rules of the school.
2. Children like to **conform** to the customs of their group.

**constant** : (adj.), **constantly** : (adv.) – not changing; continuing (แน่นอน, ไม่เปลี่ยนแปลง, ติดต่อกัน)

**Ex:-->**

1. The nice weather has been **constant** all week.
2. The boy's **constant** talking made the teacher angry.

**contact** : (v) – to get in touch with; communicate with (ติดต่อ, ติดต่อสื่อสาร)

**Ex:-->**

1. Mary tried to **contact** her friend by telephone.
2. Where can I **contact** Jim's wife?

**continue** : (v) – to keep on happening or doing, go on without stopping (ดำเนินต่อไป, ดำเนินต่อไปโดยไม่หยุดยั้ง)

**Ex:-->**

1. The snowfall **continued** for two days.
2. Tom **continued** his work in spite of a bad headache.

**country** : (n) – an area of land that has boundaries and has a government that is shared by all the people; nation; the land outside of cities and town (อาณาเขตของแผ่นดินที่มีเขตกันพรมแดนและมีรัฐบาลมาจากประชาชน ประเทศชาติ แผ่นดินโดยรอบเมืองหลวงและต่างจังหวัด)

**Ex:-->**

1. The United States and Canada are **countries**.
2. We decide to go for a drive in the **country**.

**cultural** : (adj.) – having to do with culture (the ideas, arts and way of life of a people or nation at a certain time) (อันเกี่ยวกับวัฒนธรรม)

**Ex:-->**

1. We read a book about the **cultural** history of ancient Greek.
2. There is much **cultural** stimulation.

**define** : (v) – fix exactly (กำหนด, ทำให้ชัดเจน)

**Ex:-->**

1. The river **defines** the boundary between the two states.
2. When boundaries between countries are not clearly **defined**, there is usually trouble.

**diversion** : (n) – entertainment; amusement; past time (ความสนุกสนาน, เวลาว่าง)

**Ex:-->**

1. Ronald's favorite **diversion** is fishing.
2. Chess and billiards are his favorite **diversion**.

**duty** : (n) – what one does because it is moral, right or just; the respect one should show parents, older people, that which one has to do as part of one's work (จรรยาบรรณ, หน้าที่, ความถูกต้อง)

**Ex:-->**

1. We have a **duty** to help our country.
2. What are your **duties** as a teacher?

**dweller** : (n) – inhabitant (a person that lives in a place) one who lives in a certain place (ผู้อาศัย)

**Ex:-->**

1. A person who **dwells** or lives in a city is a city dweller.
2. A bird that nests in the swamp is a swamp **dweller**.

**education** : (n) – the act or process of gaining knowledge; the knowledge gained (กระบวนการให้ความรู้, วิชาการความรู้, การศึกษา)

**Ex:-->**

1. A person's **education** at college usually takes four years.
2. He has little **education** in science.

**employment** : (n) – the act of employing or the state of being employed; the work that a person does; job (การจ้าง, ภาวะการจ้างงาน, งานที่ต้องทำ)

**Ex:-->**

1. The automobile company's **employment** of more men made it possible to manufacture cars faster.
2. After the factory closed, it was hard for many of the workers to find new **employment**.

**energy** : (n) – the strength or eagerness to work or do things (พลังกำลัง หรือความกระตือรือร้นในการทำงาน)

**Ex:-->**

1. Dara has so much **energy** that she gets up early to do exercises.
2. He had so much **energy** that he did the work of three men.

**entertainment** : (n) – something that interest and amuse; the act of entertaining (สิ่งที่น่าสนใจและสนุกสนาน, สิ่งบันเทิง)

**Ex:-->**

1. The **entertainment** at the party was a puppet show.
2. He fell into the water, much to the **entertainment** of the onlookers.

**equally** : (adv.) – in an equal manner; in equal shares (เท่าเทียมกัน)

**Ex:-->** Divide it **equally**.

**especially** : (adv.) – more than usually, particularly (พิเศษ, ผิดธรรมดา)

**Ex:-->**

1. He's **especially** careful not to slip on the icy sidewalk.
2. She likes the country, **especially** in spring.

**excitement** : (n) – the state of being excited; something that stirs up of excites (ภาวะความตื่นเต้น, สิ่งที่ทำให้ปั่นป่วนหรือตื่นตระหนก)

**Ex:-->**

1. News that caused great **excitement**.
2. Winning the contest was an **excitement** she would never forget.

**expectation** : (n) – the act of expecting (to look forward to; to want something because it is right or necessary; to think; suppose) (การคาดหวัง, สิ่งที่ต้องการเพราะเป็นความจำเป็น, คาดหมาย)

**Ex:-->**

1. Getting a watch for Christmas was Mary's one **expectation**.
2. He ate a light lunch in **expectation** of a good dinner.

**family** : (n) - a father and mother and their children (ครอบครัว)

**Ex:-->**

1. Twenty **families** live on our street.
2. The whole **family** will get together for the Christmas holidays.

**farming** : (n) - the business of raising crops or animals on a farm;  
agriculture (ธุรกิจการเพาะปลูกหรือเลี้ยงสัตว์, การทำฟาร์ม)

**Ex:-->**

1. Most of the people in that area make a living by **farming**.
2. In many countries such as Thailand, a great number of villages have only **farming** as the majority activity.

**fortune** : (n) - something either good or bad that will happen to a person; luck (บางสิ่งบางอย่างที่ดีหรือไม่ดีที่อาจเกิดขึ้นได้)

**Ex:-->**

1. The gypsy in the circus said she could tell my **fortune**.
2. It was Donna's good **fortune** to find a summer job she like at the first place she looked.

**freedom** : (n) - the condition of being free; liberty (ความอิสระเสรี)

**Ex:-->**

1. The American colonists struggled for their **freedom**.
2. Don't over enjoy your complete **freedom** to do as you wish.

**future** : (n) – the time that is to come (อนาคต)

**Ex:-->**

1. The **future** must always be uncertain.
2. Try to live a better life in **future**.

**glamorous** : (adj.) – full of glamour (charms; power of beauty or romance to move the feelings) (มากไปด้วยเสน่ห์, ความสง่างาม, ความสวยงาม)

**Ex:-->**

1. **Glamorous** film stars are mostly dazzled by producers.
2. Life can get pretty boring and the big city lights may appear **glamorous** and exciting.

**gossip** : (v) – to repeat what one knows or is told about other people;  
spread gossip (นินทา)  
(n) – talk or rumors about other people (คำนินทา)

**Ex:-->**

1. My uncle likes to **gossip** about his neighbours.
2. The neighbours are constantly watching each other and **gossiping** among themselves.

**great** : (adj.) – very large in size, number, or amount; very important;  
more than is usual; much (ขนาดใหญ่, ยิ่งใหญ่)

**Ex:-->**

1. We'll never forget her **great** kindness to us when our mother was ill.
2. An essay that shows **great** ignorance of grammar.

**industry** : (n) – manufacturing plants and other business; a branch of business; trade (อุตสาหกรรม)

**Ex:-->**

1. The people want to bring **industry** to their town so that there will be more jobs.
2. Some areas of the country depend on the tourist **industry** to bring in money.

**joy** : (n) – a strong feeling of happiness or delight (ความรู้สึกเป็นสุขสดชื่นอย่างยิ่ง, ความสดชื่นพอใจ)

**Ex:-->**

1. The little boy jumped with **joy** when he saw his father coming home.
2. We heard **joy** that she had escaped injury.

**major** : (adj.) – more important (สำคัญมาก)

**Ex:-->**

1. My father spent the **major** part of the day cleaning out the garage.
2. A **major** operation may be dangerous to the person's life.



**meditation** : (n) – meditating (think about; consider, give oneself up to serious); deep in meditation; quiet and serious thought (เข้าฌาน, ตั้งสมาธิ, ทำจิตให้สงบ)

**Ex:-->**

A **meditation** on the causes of aggression in man made me more reasonable.

**migrate** : (v) – to move from one place to another (เคลื่อนย้ายจากที่หนึ่งไปยังอีกที่หนึ่ง, อพยพ)

**Ex:-->**

1. The pioneers in the United States **migrated** to the West to find land to settle on.
2. Many birds **migrate** in the early winter.

**migration** : (n) – the act of moving from one place to another (การย้ายถิ่นฐาน)

**Ex:-->**

During their **migration**, geese from Canada stop at a pond near our house.

**motive** : (n) – the reason that a person does something (เหตุผลที่คนกระทำการสิ่งต่าง ๆ, แรงจูงใจ)

**Ex:-->**

1. A desire to go to college was his **motive** for trying to get good marks.

2. Police looked for the **motive** for the crime to help them find the person who did it.

**need** : (n) – something that is necessary, useful, or desired; the lack of something necessary, useful, or desired (สิ่งที่มีความจำเป็น, เป็นประโยชน์, การตัดสินใจ, การขาดแคลนสิ่งที่จำเป็น)

**Ex:-->**

1. The team's defeat slowed their **need** for practice.
2. What are the **needs** for our camping trip?

**neighbour** : (n) – a person who lives in the house or apartment next to or near one's own; a person, place, or thing that is next to or near another (เพื่อนบ้าน, บุคคล, สถานที่ที่อยู่ใกล้เคียงหรือถัดไป)

**Ex:-->**

1. Our **neighbour** down the street took care of our dog while we were away on vacation.
2. Mexico is a **neighbour** of the United States.

**obligation** : (n) – something a person must do; duty; responsibility (สิ่งที่ควรกระทำ, หน้าที่, ความรับผิดชอบ, พันธนาการ)

**Ex:-->**

1. We are under an **obligation** to pay him back the money he lent us.
2. It is the **obligation** of all citizens to vote.

**occupations** : (n) – the permanent work that person does in order to earn a living; profession (งานที่ทำเพื่อเลี้ยงชีวิต, อาชีพ)

**Ex:-->**

1. My father's **occupation** is teaching school.
2. Father's **occupation** is selling shoes.

**offer** : (v) – to show a desire to do or give something; volunteer; to make a show of (ตัดสินใจที่จะกระทำหรือให้สิ่งของ, อาสา)

**Ex:-->**

1. She **offered** to help me with the ironing.
2. The enemy **offered** little resistance when our soldiers attacked.

**opportunity** : (n) – a good chance; favorable time (โอกาสดี, โชคอำนวย)

**Ex:-->**

1. When the pond froze, we had an **opportunity** to go ice skating.
2. I had no **opportunity** to discuss the matter with her.

**pace** : (n) – the rate of movement; development; the rate at which a thing is done (อัตราการเคลื่อนย้าย, การพัฒนา, ความก้าวหน้า)

**Ex:-->**

1. The men are working at a fast **pace**.
2. The men worked at a slow **pace**.

**peace** : (n) – quiet; freedom from war, fighting, or noise (ความเงียบ, ปราศจากสงคราม, ปราศจากการต่อสู้หรือรบกัน)

**Ex:-->**

1. The war ended, and the country was at **peace**.
2. They made **peace** with their enemies.

**peaceful** : (adj.) – quiet and calm, undisturbed free from war or disorder (เงียบและเยือกเย็น, ปราศจากการรบกันโดยปราศจากสงครามหรือความสับสน)

**Ex:-->**

1. After the storm, it was **peaceful** in the wet garden.
2. Everyone who visited the **peaceful** valley never forgot its beauty.

**personal** : (adj.) – private; not public; done or made in person (ส่วนตัว, ไม่เป็นสาธารณะ, ลักษณะเฉพาะตัว)

**Ex:-->**

1. My diary is **personal**, and other people should not read it without permission.
2. The famous actress made a **personal** appearance at the first showing of her new movie.

**pointless** : (adj.) – with little or no sense, aim or purpose (ไม่มีจุดมุ่งหมาย, ไม่สำคัญ)

**Ex:-->**

1. It seemed **pointless** to go on until they were certain of being on the right road.
2. To remain in the village would be **pointless**.

**potential** : (n) – *that which is potential; possibility; what somebody or something is capable of* (อาจเป็นไปได้, ศักยภาพ)

**Ex:-->**

1. He has not realized his full **potential** yet.
2. He seems to have **potential** as a leader.

**practise** : (v) – *do something repeatedly or regularly in order to become skillful; to gain skill; to work at a profession* (ฝึกหัดหรือทำบ่อย ๆ จนชำนาญ)

**Ex:-->**

1. He **practises** the violin every day.
2. Tom's father **practises** law.

**really** : (adv.) – *in fact; actually; truly* (ในความเป็นจริง, ความถูกต้อง)

**Ex:-->**

1. The man told the police what had **really** caused the accident.
2. Although Johny and Susan argue sometimes, they are **really** good friends.

**reason** : (n) – *cause for a belief or act; purpose; the power of think or decide* (เหตุผล, จุดมุ่งหมาย, ความคิดที่เหมาะสมในการตัดสินใจ)

**Ex:-->**

1. What is the **reason** for this meeting?
2. There is no **reason** to doubt her word.

**region** : (n) – any large area or territory (แคว้น, อาณาจักร, ดินแดนกว้างใหญ่)

**Ex:-->**

1. This plant grows in desert **regions**.
2. He came to a **region** of ice and snow.

**relief** : (n) – a bringing of comfort or help (ให้ความสุขสบาย, ช่วยเหลือ)

**Ex:-->**

1. It was a great **relief** to all of us when our lost dog came home.
2. We got **relief** from the heat by going into an air-conditioned room.

**remain** : (v) – to stay behind or in the same place (คงอยู่ในสถานที่หนึ่ง)

**Ex:-->**

1. Dick **remained** at home while the rest of us went to the party.
2. To **remain in** the village would be pointless.

**restriction** : (n) – something that restricts (ข้อจำกัด)

**Ex:-->**

1. There are no **restriction** on who can use the gym during school hour.
2. In the village there are many family obligations and social **restriction**.

**return** : (v) to come or go **back** (กลับมา)

**Ex:-->**

1. He **returned** home to get the book he had forgotten.
2. She will **return** in an hour.

**seek** : (v) - to **try to find; go in search of; to try to get** (ค้นหา, หา)

**Ex:-->**

1. Many people leave their villages to **seek** their fortunes in the city.
2. The police were **seeking** a stolen car.

**slow** : (adj.) **acti~~ng~~**, moving, or happening with little speed; not fast  
or quick (การกระทำ, การเคลื่อนไหวหรือเกิดขึ้นอย่างช้า ๆ, ไม่รวดเร็ว)

**Ex:-->**

1. In the country, the pace of life is slow and easy.
2. She was slow to answer the teacher's question.

**spend** : (v) - to **pass time** (ใช้เวลาว่าง)

**Ex:-->**

1. **We spent** the weekend in the country.
2. **We** like to **spend** the holidays at home.

**steady** : (adj.) - not changing ; regular (ไม่เปลี่ยนแปลง, เลี้ยงตัวได้, ทรงตัว)

**Ex:-->**

1. This drugstore has many **steady** customers.

2. More and more, there is a **steady** migration to urban centers of people who are seeking employment, personal freedom and excitement.

**stimulation** : (n) – stimulating or being stimulated (ความเบื่กบาน, เร่งเร้า)

**Ex:-->**

1. The city offer much contact with people from different regions and even countries. There is much cultural **stimulation**.
2. This drug **stimulates** the heart.

**urban** : (adj.) – of or in a town, concerning, typical of, or forming a city (ในกำแพงเมือง, ในเมือง)

**urbanite** : (n) – one living in a city (ชาวเมือง)

**Ex:-->**

1. Traffic is a major **urban** problem.
2. Bangkok is the over-crowded **urban** area of Thailand.

**village** : (v) – place similar than a town (หมู่บ้าน)

**Ex:-->**

1. There are fewer than fifty houses in the **village**.
2. Many people leave their **villages** to seek their fortunes in the city.



**ASSIGNMENT 2**

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. *“Applying for a Job”*

***It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.***

***Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***

# The Jotted Outline

## *Applying for a Job*

### ***I. Thesis***

*Looking good, having confidence, and being honest are three things you should keep in mind when applying for a job.*

### ***II. Looking Good***

- the first impression is very lasting
- looking good is very important
- your dress should be comfortable and appropriate
- appearance can be associated with work habits
- being tidy and clean is important
- sloppy appearance reflects sloppy habits
- the inner appearance is also important
- it shows your attitude

### ***III. Being Confident***

- don't be nervous

- act like you know why you are there and what you want
- don't start questioning yourself or your life
- be interested, energetic, and enthusiastic
- don't be extremely shy or extremely enthusiastic (have natural confidence)
- confidence shows capability of initiative and efficiency at work

#### ***IV. Be Honest***

- the employer knows what he wants
- not getting the job doesn't mean there's something wrong with you
- don't try to be someone you aren't (be yourself and be honest)
- be interested and open
- it is not necessary to over-sell (you, the product, speak for yourself)
- Letters of reference and examples of your work are useful
- don't make up stories (the truth will come out later)
- honesty is a valuable attribute

#### ***V. Conclusion***

***When applying for a job, you should try to look good, be confident and be honest.***

### **Applying for a Job**

Unless you are supported by someone or are independently wealthy, applying for a job is something you have probably done at sometimes or other, and still do again. Applying for a job is like being a salesman. The product you are marketing is yourself. You have a limited time in which to make an impression and if you want the job, you will want to make a good impression. ***It is not necessary to flow an instruction book, but looking good, having confidence, and being honest are three things you should keep in mind when applying for a job.***

“A picture is worth a thousand words.” This is a popular English quote. ***Of course it is not the clothes that get the job, but the first impression is very lasting and therefore looking good it of extreme importance.*** You should dress comfortably, but not be overdressed or underdressed. A potential employer will probably associate your experience with your work habits. So it is important to look tidy and clean. A sloppy or careless appearance will most likely be reflected in sloppy or careless appearance will most likely be reflected in sloppy and careless work habits. Your inner appearance, as well as your outer appearance, matters greatly. If you feel sleepy, agitated or half-serious, it will be noticed by the employer.

***Showing confidence when applying for a job, has great value.*** Be careful not to be clumsy or shaky in your speech as a result of

nervousness. Remember that you, in turn, are interviewing your future employer. You should act like you know what you are doing in your life and why you have come to apply for the job. Don't look vague or blank, as if you aren't sure why you are there. Now is not the time to start questioning yourself or your life. You should appear interested and energetic but not be over enthusiastic. Acting shy and indecisive won't be helpful, but too much enthusiasm could come across as aggression. Showing calm and natural confidence is ideal. Confidence is necessary for initiative and efficiency at work.

Remember that you and the employer are just two different people. He is most likely looking for someone and something specific. If you don't get the job, it doesn't necessarily reflect on your abilities. But presenting an image of yourself that you think he might like is not a good idea. *Just be yourself* and *be honest*. Of course you should be interested and open. But if you really are capable of filling the position and have something to offer, you don't have to put on a mask. If a product is good, it will speak for itself. Over-selling is only necessary to convince someone of something that cannot be clearly seen. It is useful if you have letters of reference, or copies and examples of your work. But don't concoct stories and lie to get a job, because the truth will always be found out after some time, anyway. And honesty is a valuable quality most employers look for.

Much as it is not enjoyable, most people, at sometimes or other, must apply for a job. *The first impression you make is very important, so you should try to look good, be confident, and be honest when you go.*

## VOCABULARY REVIEW & SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

### Applying for a Job

**act:** (v) – to behave in a manner suitable to, to pretend you are someone else (แสดง)

**Ex.-->**

1. She's not really crying; she's only **acting** in order to gain your sympathy.
2. He **acts** as if he was an actor.

**aggression:** (n) – act of attacking; often beginning a quarrel; attack made without just cause (การก้าวร้าว)

**Ex.-->**

1. The naughty boy is **aggressive**.
2. He was retire from his job, because of his **aggression**.

**appear:** (v) – seem (ดูเหมือน)

**Ex.-->**

1. John **seems** to have many friends.
2. Why does she **seem** so sad?

**appearance:** (n) – the act, action, process of appearing outward

respect: look external show (ท่าทาง, ลักษณะภายนอก)

**Ex.-->**

1. Your **appearance** should be friendly.
2. We mustn't judge by **appearance**.

**apply:** (v) - to make a request or ask; put into position; to apply for a position (สมัครงาน)

**Ex.-->**

1. He can't get along with a boss, so he has to **apply** for a new job.
2. John has just read an advertisement of N.H.K. company, so he intend to **apply** it.

**associate:** (v) - join or connect (person or things, one with another)  
(มีส่วนร่วม, มีความสัมพันธ์, คบหาสมาคม)

**Ex.-->**

1. I don't wish to **associate** myself with what has been said, don't want anyone to think that I have a part in it.
2. Don't **associate** with dishonest boys.

**blank :** (adj.) - empty without interest or expression (ตกประหม่า, งงวาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. His first interview make him **blank**.
2. John looks **blank**, because he seems not to be interested, not to understand.



**calm:** (adj.) – not easily upset; not excited; quite (สงบ, เงียบ, ใจเย็น)

Ex.-->

John doesn't angry easily because he is **calm**.

**careless:** (adj.) – not taking care; thoughtless (ประมาท, เลินเล่อ, สะเพร่า)

Ex.-->

1. A **careless** driver is a danger to the public.
2. Mary is **careless** about leaving the door unlocked when she goes to bed.

**clumsy:** (adj.) – heavy and ungraceful in movement (งุ่มง่าม, เทอะทะ, เชื้อช้า)

Ex.-->

1. The **clumsy** workman put his elbow through the window and broke it.
2. A **clumsy** man walks unsteadily.

**concoct:** (v) – invent (a story) (ประกอบขึ้น, คิด)

Ex.-->

1. In applying for a job, you shouldn't **concoct** stories in order to get a job.
2. Nancy likes to **concoct** stories in order to gain someone belief her.

**confidence:** (n) – belief in oneself or others (ความไว้วางใจ, ความเชื่อมั่นในตนเอง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Nancy answered the questions with **confidence**.
2. Don't put too much **confidence** in what the newspapers say.

**convince:** (v) - *make feel certain; cause to realize* (ทำให้เชื่อ, ชักจูง)

**Ex.-->**

1. We couldn't **convince** him of his mistake.
2. Mary **convince** her friend in order to belief her idea.

**different:** (adj.) - *not the same* (แตกต่างกัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. They are **different** people with the same name.
2. The two boys are **different** in their tastes.

**dress:** (v) - *put on clothes* (แต่งตัว)

**Ex.-->**

1. Mary was **dressing** her doll.
2. Jim isn't old enough to **dress** himself.

**employer:** (n) - *anyone who gives people work to do (generally regular work for a salary or wages)* (นายจ้าง)

**Ex.-->**

Remember that employee and **employer** are just two different people.

**enjoyable:** (adj.) - pleasant (สนุก, ชอบ, เฟลิดเฟลิน)

Ex.-->

The class had an **enjoyable** time at museum.

**extreme:** (adj.) - (of qualities, etc.) reaching the highest degree  
(ที่สุด, อย่างยิ่ง)

Ex.-->

Don't be shy and enthusiastic is **extreme** importance.

**habit:** (n) - an action you do so often or for so long that you do it  
without thinking to stop or control idea (นิสัย, สิ่งที่เคยชินจน  
เป็นนิสัย)

Ex.-->

1. Don't let yourself get into bad **habits**.
2. He was the bad **habit** of biting his fingernails.

**honest:** (adj.) - not telling lies; not cheating or stealing (ซื่อสัตย์, สุจริต)

Ex.-->

1. You should be **honest** in your duty.
2. To connect with someone for your business you should be  
**honest**.

**find out:** (idiom) - discover (ค้นพบ, ค้นหา)

Ex.-->

1. I was unable to **find out** the name of the man who called.

2. Will you please try to **find out** for me what time the train arrives?

**follow:** (v) – to understand (as, to follow an explanation, to action (as, to follow advice) (เข้าใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He spoke so fast that I couldn't **follow** him (what he said).
2. Do you **follow** my argument?

**great:** (adj.) – very important or famous (สำคัญมาก)  
– much more than the usual (เก่ง, อย่างใหญ่หลวง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Mary is a **great** friend of mine.
2. The scientist's care for this disease was a **great** discovery.

**ideal:** (n) – a person or thing thought of as perfect  
(adj.) – being exactly what one would hope for perfect (อุดมคติ, แบบอย่าง, ดีเลิศ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The famous football player was the **ideal** of many boys.
2. The breeze makes it an **ideal** day for going sailing.

**image:** (n) – a picture, idea, or likeness of a person or thing (ความนึกคิดที่เกิดขึ้นภายในจิตใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **image** of the Thai people that a tourist expects to see is that the Thai people should be gentle.
2. The athlete is the **image** of good health.

**importance:** (n) – the state of being important (ความสำคัญ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Rain is of great **importance** to farmers since crops can't grow without water.
2. Food is the **importance** for human life.

**impression:** (n) – an effect on the mind or feelings (ความประทับใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. What was your **impression** of the new girl in our class?
2. Tourists have the **impression** that they are very pleased to visit Thailand.

**indecisive :** (adj.) – not decisive (ลังเล, ไม่ได้เด็ดขาด)

**Ex.-->**

1. Mary is **indecisive** when she answer some questions.
2. John is a man with an **indecisive** manner.

**initiative:** (adj.) – the first step in doing or beginning something. The ability or willingness to take a first step in doing or learning something (เป็นการริเริ่ม, ความคิดริเริ่มหาหนทางด้วยตนเอง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Jean took the **initiative** at the party by introducing herself to the people she didn't know.
2. The lazy boy did not have much **initiative**.

**instruction:** (n) – the act of teaching, directions, explanations (คำแนะนำ, คำสั่ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. She learned how to state through her brother's **instruction**.
2. If you follow the **instructions**, you can put the model airplane together easily.

**interested:** (adj.) – having an interest; showing interest; taking an interest (สนใจ)

**Ex.-->**

I shall be **interested** to know what happens.

**mask:** (n) – anything that hides or cover up something (หน้ากาก)

**Ex.-->**

1. He hid his sadness with a **mask** of happiness.
2. The children wore **masks** to the Halloween party.

**necessary:** (adj.) – which has to be done; which must be; which cannot be done without or escaped (จำเป็น, สิ่งจำเป็น)

**Ex.-->**

1. Sleep is **necessary** to health.
2. Proper food and rest are **necessary** for good health.

**nervous:** (adj.) – upset, fearful or timid (ริษยา, กังวล, ตกประหม่า)

**Ex.-->**

1. Loud noises make me **nervous**.
2. I am very **nervous** about taking the exam.

**notice:** (v) – observe or see (สังเกต, เห็น)

**Ex.-->**

1. Did you **notice** this hand shaking?
2. I **noticed** that he left early.

**position:** (n) – job; employment (ตำแหน่ง, ฐานะ, สภาพ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Mary apply for the **position** of assistant manager.
2. The **position** of secretary is appropriate for Mary.

**potential:** (adj.) – able to exist; can or may come into existence or action (สามารถจะเป็นได้, ความสามารถที่ซ่อนเร้นอยู่ภายใน)

**Ex.-->**

That popular girl is a **potential** leader in our class.

**probably:** (adv.) – almost surely (น่าจะเป็น, ค่อนข้างแน่)

**Ex.-->**

1. We will **probably** go on a trip this summer.

2. Jim will **probably** finish his homework before his parent come back.

**reflect:** (v) – to turn or throw back; send back an image of (สะท้อนกลับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The sight of my face **reflected** in the mirror never pleases me.
2. Look at the trees **reflected** in the lake.

**remember:** (v) – to bring back or recall to the mind; to keep in mind carefully (จำได้)

**Ex.-->**

1. Please **remember** that you have an appointment with the dentist today.
2. Do you **remember** where you left your jacket?

**result:** (n) – that which is produced by an activity or cause; outcome; effect (ผลของการกระทำ)

**Ex.-->**

1. His limp is the **result** of a car accident last year.
2. He won the race as a **result** of his greater speed.

**shaky:** (adj.) – trembling; shaking (สั่น, สะท้าน, ตัวสั่น)

**Ex.-->**

1. The frightened boy answered in a **shaky** voice.
2. The terrible news make me **shaky**.



**speech:** (n) – power, act, manner, of speaking (การพูด, คำพูด, คำปราศรัย, วาทะ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Our thoughts are expressed by **speech**.
2. They say that **speech** is silver but silence is golden.

**tidy:** (adj.) – clean and neat; having the habit of placing and keeping everything in its right place (เป็นระเบียบเรียบร้อย, สะอาดสะอ้าน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Mary is a very **tidy** person.
2. My brother's closet is not very **tidy**.

**truth:** (n) – something that is true (ความจริง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Mrs. Andrew taught her children to tell the **truth**.
2. It is not **truth** in what he says.

**ASSIGNMENT 3**

**Direction :** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. *“Composition Writing Can Be Fairly Easy”*

**It is more useful to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.**

**Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.**

# The Jotted Outline

## *Composition Writing Can Be Fairly Easy*

### **1. Thesis**

*Composition writing can be fairly easy because it is familiar to us, there are countless topics and ideas from which to choose, and it is formed by using a basic structure.*

### **II. Composition writing is something familiar.**

- we are doing this all the time, mentally
- subjects are constantly passing through the mind
- people from big cities get much mental stimulation
- we always dream of the future and the past
- these are like dramas, they are sometimes very exciting episodes
- often an experienced is replayed over and over in the mind
- we are always in a process of evaluation
- most of waking time is full of these mental plays
- composition writing its transferring them onto paper in an organized way

### ***III. There are countless topics to choose from.***

- there is an almost infinite number of topics
- many topics could be jotted down on a bus ride
- even the smallest subject could be developed into a composition
- any life episode, or experience could be used
- the same idea could be written with different approaches
- the nature of the topic and purpose of composition determines composition type
- most people have a surplus of stories, ideas, and opinions

### ***IV. A Structure is Used.***

- like any story, a composition has a beginning, middle and end
- the essay form depends on the topic and type of composition
- the ideas are put together into well-formed paragraphs and sentences
- they should be made to be interesting to the reader
- this process will become natural and automatic after practise

### ***V. Conclusion***

***Writing is not just for professionals. With some effort and patience, composition writing can be fairly easy.***

---

**Composition Writing Can Be Fairly Easy**

---

Composition writing may appear to be a very difficult and esoteric undertaking to the person who doesn't see himself as a Shakespeare or a professional writer, but really, it is not. That is only one way of looking at it. *From another angle it can be seen as easy because it is something very familiar to us; there are countless topics and ideas from which to choose and it is written by following a basic structure.*

*Writing compositions is really something we do all the time.* Next time you are on a bus, close your eyes and watch, in the space of five minutes, how many subjects pass through your mind. Especially those people who live in big cities where the mental stimulation and interaction with other people is very intense. Perhaps some of those are future dreams. Others may be past reflections. But most of these thoughts coming and going are like theatre and dramas, with us as the central characters. Some of those mental plays are extremely involved and exciting, and often more exciting than our real lives. Or maybe an argument you had with someone replays over you over in your mind while you mentally oversent your argument again. "I should have said this. I shouldn't have said that." "Next time I'll say this, and do that." Or notice that there is a constant evaluation process going on. Entering that comes into view we tend to evaluate, or give our opinions on, in our

minds. Most people, if they stop to look, will see that almost 100% of their waking time is filled with these day dreams or thoughts. Writings a compositions is simple transferring all this down on paper in a solid and organized form.

***There are an almost infinite number of topics in this world and beyond this world.*** It is impossible to be knowledgeable in all fields and some subjects are of course has familiar than others, but it would be easy to jot down at least ten topics for a composition on any bus ride. You could stop the mind ramble about time and choose any subject. If you take this approach, even the smallest matter could be developed into a composition. An episode or experience from your own life or anyone else's could be used. Different compositions could be formed using the same idea but changing the approaches. The topic could be presented in a factual, descriptive, informative, argumentative or any other form. This of course, would depend on the nature of the topic, and the purpose of the composition. But most of us have an overabundance of stories, ideas, and opinions produced by overactive minds. We simply have to tap the energy source.

***Once the topic, purpose, and approach have been decided, the actual development of the idea is fairly easy, because a structure or format is applied.*** Like any episode in our lives, a composition must have a beginning or introduction, a middle or development, and a

conclusion, in order to be complete. It is like a circle that must finish at the point where it first began. Different topics being presented in different ways for different purposes will use different essay forms. Once the subject, type, and length of the composition have been decided, it is a matter of pressing the ideas into well-formed paragraphs and contents to carry across the message. This of course, should be done to the most interesting way possible. This is the creative side of writing. The process, or organization of thoughts and ideas into a workable structure will become natural and automatic after some experience is acquired, and ideas and writing will flow more clearly, concisely, and easily.

So although many people may think that writing is for Shakespeare or the professionals, it is actually something they are capable of doing. ***With some effort, patience, and perseverance, anyone could construct a good composition. It can be fairly easy. Why don't you give it a try?***

## VOCABULARY REVIEW & SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

### *Composition Writing Can Be Fairly Easy*

**acquire** : (v) – gain by skill or ability, by one's own efforts or behaviour (ได้รับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. When she went to the farm, she **acquired** a liking for horseback riding.
2. He **acquired** the ability to speak Spanish while he lived in Mexico.

**actual** : (adj.) – real existing in fact (เป็นจริง)

**Ex.-->**

1. That book is about **actual** people, not imaginary ones.
2. It's an **actual** fact; I haven't invented or imagined it.

**although** : (conj.) – even if; in spite of the fact (แม้ว่า)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Although** I ate a big dinner, I was hungry again very soon.
2. I will go, **although** I would rather stay home.



**angle** : (n) - a point of view (แง่คิด, ความเห็น)

Ex.-->

1. Jeff was having trouble solving the problem, so he tried to look at it from another **angle**.
2. What **angle** are you writing the story from?

**apply** : (v) - make practical use of (research; a discovery) (ประยุกต์ใช้)

Ex.-->

We can **apply** his findings in new developments.

**approach** : (n) - a way of doing something (วิธี, ระเบียบวิธี)

Ex.-->

1. His **approach** to training his dog was to be very patient.
2. If you take this **approach**, even the smallest matter could be developed into a composition.

**automatic** : (adj.) - done without a person control (โดยอัตโนมัติ)

Ex.-->

Breathing is an **automatic** action of the body during sleep.

**basic** : (adj.) - of or forming a base; main (พื้นฐาน)

Ex.-->

1. You must obey the **basic** rules.
2. Food is a **basic** human need.

**change** (v) – to make or become different; to replace with another or others; exchange (เปลี่ยน)

Ex.-->

1. Bob **changed** seats with Dick.
2. Joe **changed** his mind about going to the movies.

**character** : (n) – all the qualities that make a person or thing what it is or make it different from others; what a person really is (บุคลิกลักษณะ)

Ex.-->

1. You can judge a person's **character** by the way he feels, thinks, and acts.
2. As he grew older, his **character** changed greatly.

**choose** : (v) – pick out from a greater number; show what or which one wants by taking (เลือก)

Ex.-->

1. She took a long time to **choose** her new hat.
2. The greedy boy **chose** the largest apple in the dish.

**clearly** : (adv.) – distinctly; undoubtedly (อย่างชัดเจน)

Ex.-->

1. It is too dark to see **clearly**.
2. Jack answered the question loudly and **clearly**.

**complete** : (adj.) - perfect; thorough (สมบูรณ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. The new play promised to be a **complete** success.
2. A composition must have a beginning or introduction, a middle or development, and a conclusion, in order to be **complete**.

**composition** : (n) - that which is composed (combine to form),  
especially a piece of writing; the parts that make up  
something; something that is put together or created  
(เรียงความ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Steve wrote a **composition** for English class about life in colonial America.
2. Scientists study the **composition** of the soil.

**concise** : (adj.) - of a person speech or style of writing, etc. (รวบรัด,  
รัดกุม)

**concisely** : (adv.) - (อย่างสั้น ๆ, อย่างรวบรัด)

**Ex.-->**

The process, or organization of thoughts and ideas into a workable structure will become natural and automatic after some experience is acquired, and ideas and writing will flow more clearly, **concisely** and easily.

**conclusion** (n) - the end of something; arrangement; settlement (บทสรุป)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **conclusion** of the movie was very happy.
2. At the **conclusion** of the talk, we asked questions.

**constant** : (adj.) - not changing; continuing (อย่างมั่นคง)

Ex.-->

1. The nice weather has been **constant** all week.
2. The boy's **constant** talking made the teacher angry.

**construct** : (v) - build; put or fit together (สร้าง, ทำ)

Ex.-->

1. With some effort, patience, and perseverance, anyone could **construct** a good composition.
2. Bob and his father **constructed** a tool shed in the backyard.

**countless** : (adj.) - that cannot be counted (because too numerous)  
(ไม่สามารถนับได้, มีมากมายมหาศาล)

Ex.-->

There are **countless** topics and ideas from which to choose and it is written by following a basic structure.

**creative** : (adj.) - having or showing ability to make something new  
(มีความคิดสร้างสรรค์)

Ex.-->

A poet must be **creative**.

**decide** : (v) – think about; make up one's mind (ตัดสินใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He could not **decide** what he should do next.
2. In the end she **decide** to buy the green hat.

**depend on** : (idiom) – need; rely on (ขึ้นอยู่กับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Good health **depends on** good food, exercise and getting enough sleep.
2. He **depends on** his pen for a living, makes a living by writing.

**descriptive** : (adj.) – giving a picture in words (พรรณนา, อธิบาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. The tourists were given **descriptive** pamphlets about places to visit in the city.
2. There is some excellent **descriptive** writing in Hardy's novels.

**develop** : (v) – to bring or come into being or activity (พัฒนา)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **developed** his mind by study.
2. She **developed** an interest in poetry.

**development** : (n) – developing or being developed (การพัฒนา)

**Ex.-->**

1. He is engaged in the **development** of his business.

2. The **development** of photographic files requires a dark room.

**different** : (adj.) – not alike or similar; not the same; separate  
(แตกต่างกัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. A bicycle and a motorcycle are **different**.
2. It rained two **different** times this afternoon.

**difficult** : (adj.) – hard to do, solve, or understand; not easy (ยาก)

**Ex.-->**

1. Carrying the heavy bed upstairs was a **difficult** job.
2. This is a **difficult** arithmetic.

**drama** : (n) – a story that is written for actors to perform on the stage;  
play (บทละคร)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Drama** is the art of acting in plays.
2. Life in New York City is full of **drama**.

**easily** : (adv.) – without any doubt; for sure (อย่างง่ายดาย)

**Ex.-->**

Warren is **easily** the best player on the team.

**effort** : (n) – hard work; a hard try (ความมานะพยายาม)

**Ex.-->**

1. With some **effort**, patience, and perseverance, anyone could construct a good composition.
2. Make an **effort** to get there on time.

episode : (n) ~ one part of a series of events in a story or real life (ตอน, บท, ฉาก)

Ex.-->

1. I watched the third episode of that television series.
2. The **episode** of the rescue was the most exciting part of the book.

**especially** : (adv.) - more than usually; particularly (โดยเฉพาะอย่างยิ่ง)

Ex.-->

1. Kathy came over **especially** to see my new dress.
2. Be **especially** careful not to slip on the icy sidewalk.

**evaluate** : (v) - find out; decide the amount or value of  
(ประเมินค่า, ตีราคา)

**evaluation** : (n)

Ex.-->

That test is used **to evaluate** how well students are doing in the reading program.

**exciting** : (adj.) - causing excitement; thrilling (น่าตื่นเต้น)

Ex.-->

1. For me, the tightrope walkers are the most **exciting** part of the circus.
2. Some of these mental plays are extremely involved and **exciting** and often were exciting than our real lives.

**experience** : (n) – something that a person has done, seen, or taken part in; the knowledge or skill a person gains from doing something (ประสบการณ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. The old man told us about his **experience** as a soldier.
2. Jack has three years' **experience** as a salesman.

**extremely** : (adv.) – very (มาก uly)

**Ex:-->**

He was **extremely** happy when he won the contest.

**factual** : (adj.) – containing or having to do with facts (ข้อเท็จจริง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The topic could be presented in a **factual**, descriptive, informative, argumentative or any other form.
2. The witness gave a **factual** account of the accident.

**familiar** : (adj.) – often heard or seen; knowing something well (คุ้นเคย)

**Ex.-->** 1. I can't remember the name of the song; but the tune is **familiar**.



2. I am **familiar** with that story.

*follow : (v) – to act according to; obey (ทำตาม)*

**Ex.-->**

1. Follow the instructions on the package.
2. There are countless topics and ideas from which to choose and it is written by **following** a basic structure.

*form : (n) – shape; outward or visible appearance (รูปแบบ, รูปทรง, ลักษณะ)*

**Ex.-->**

1. Perhaps was a Greek sea-god who could appear in the form of any creature he wished.
2. Writing a composition is simply transferring all this down on paper in a solid and organized **form**.

**format : (n) – arrangement; procedure; style (รูปแบบ, กระบวนการ)**

**Ex.-->**

The actual development of the idea is fairly easy, because a structure or **format** is applied.

*idea : (n) – a thought, belief, or opinion formed in the mind (ความคิด)*

**Ex.-->**

1. The author had an **idea** for a new novel.
2. John has some very good **ideas** for the party decorations.

***infinite*** : (adj.) - without limits or an *end* (ไม่สิ้นสุด)

**Ex.-->**

1. There are an almost ***infinite*** number of topics in this world and beyond this world.
2. Outer space seems to be ***infinite***.

***intense*** : (adj.) - very great or strong; having or showing strong or true feeling (เข้มข้น, แรงกล้า)

**Ex.-->**

1. The worried woman had an ***intense*** look on her face as she waited for news of her sick child.
2. He is an ***intense*** worker.

***interact*** : (v) - act on each other; ***interaction*** : (n) - (ปฏิกริยาโต้ตอบ)

**Ex.-->**

Especially those people who live in big cities where the mental stimulation and ***interaction*** with other people is very intense.

***introduction*** : (n) - the act of introduction or the state of being introduced; something that introduces (คำแนะนำ)

**Ex.-->**

1. We shook hands after our ***introduction***.
2. The book has a short ***introduction*** written by the author.

**involve** : (v) – to **have as** a **necessary** part; include (พัวพัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. His job as a salesman **involves** a great deal of traveling.
2. The war **involved** a great increase in the national debt.

**jot** : (v) – to **make** a short and quick note of something (จดโน้ตสั้น ๆ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The policeman **jotted** down my name and address.
2. The owner of the store **jotted** down the license number of the robber's car as it sped away.

**knowledge** : (n) – what **is** known from understanding, experience, or study (ความรู้)

**Ex.-->**

1. Pam has enough **knowledge** of football to be able to follow a game on television.
2. Ted has very little **knowledge** of Latin.

**mental** : (adj.) – **done** by or having to **do** with **the** mind (เกี่ยวกับสมอง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Learning to speak is one stage of a child's **mental** development.
2. He had great **mental** ability.

**mind** : (n) – the part of a person that thinks, knows, learns, remembers, understands, and feels (จิตใจ)

Ex.-->

1. Linda's high marks in school show that she has a good **mind**.
2. Keep your **mind** on what you're doing.

**notice** : (v) – to become aware of; observe (สังเกต)

Ex.-->

1. He **noticed** that the room was getting cooler.
2. I **noticed** Fred's car parked outside.

**opinion** : (n) – a belief that is based on what a person thinks rather than on what is proved or known to be true (ความคิด)

Ex.-->

1. It is my **opinion** that he will win the race.
2. What is your **opinion** of that movie?

**overactive** : (adj.) – too active (กระตือรือร้นมากเกินไป)

Ex.-->

But most of us have an overabundance of stories, ideas and opinions produced by **overactive** winds.

**pass** : (v) – go by or move past something (ผ่าน)

Ex.-->

1. I **passed** his car on the road.

2. I **pass** the park on my way to school.

**patience** : (n) – a being able to put up with hardship, pain, trouble, or delay without getting angry or upset (ความอดทน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The crowd showed great **patience** as they waited in the rain to buy tickets to the movie.
2. I haven't the **patience** to hear your complaints again.

**perseverance** : (n) – constant effort to achieve something (พากเพียร, อดสาหัส, พยายาม)

**Ex.-->**

With some effort, patience, and **perseverance**, anyone could construct a good composition.

**professional** : (adj.) – having to do with a job that requires special education; making money from doing something that other people do for fun (โดยอาชีพ)

**Ex.-->**

1. An architect is a **professional** person.
2. A doctor's **professional** duties are to care for the sick.

**purpose** : (n) – the reason for which something is made or done (จุดมุ่งหมาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. What is the **purpose** of that book on the wall?

2. What is your **purpose** in going to the college?

**really** : (adv.) – in fact; actually; truly (จริงๆ ๗)

**Ex.-->**

1. The man told the police what had **really** caused the accident.
2. Although Johnny and Susan argue sometimes, they are **really** good friends.

**structure** : (n) – an arrangement of parts, or the way parts are arranged  
(โครงสร้าง)

**Ex.-->**

1. We studied the **structure** of a plant cell by looking at it through a microscope.
2. He is writing the book about the **structure** of modern society.

**topic** : (n) – what something is about : subject for discussion (หัวข้อเรื่อง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The senator spoke on the **topic** “How to Save Our Forests.”
2. The subjects of a book, tale, or discussion is its **topic**.

**ASSIGNMENT 4**

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition *from this* given topic. **“Go Take a Walk”**

***It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.***

***Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***

---

# The Sentence Outline

Go Take a Walk

## *I: Thesis :*

***Walking is good for one's health, allows one to see interesting sights and meet people and it's inexpensive.***

## *II. Walking is good for one's health.*

- A. It is an excellent and easy form of exercise
- B. It allows one to breathe fresh air

## *III. Walking allows one to see the sights.*

- A. One can have a better feeling for an environment than on a freeway, bus or subway
- B. One can notice more details
- C. One can meet interesting people

## *IV. Walking is inexpensive.*

- A. All it costs is time
- B. It takes less money and worry than driving during rush-hour or fighting for space in a crowded bus or subway

## *V. Conclusion*

***Try walking next time, and get to know your neighbourhood***



## Go Take a Walk

Most people are in too much of a hurry to enjoy walking. They don't think they have the time or energy to walk. **However, walking is one of the best ways to get around; it is good for one's health, it allows one to see the sights and meet people, and it's inexpensive as well.**

**Walking is an excellent and easy form of exercise.** One can exercise most major muscles in the body by walking. And a steady pace can help regulate one's heartbeat and breathing too. Walking also allows one to breathe fresh air, which may be a welcome change from a sealed off air-conditioned office, a smog-filled freeway, or an underground subway station.

**In addition, walking allows me to see interesting sights and meet *interesting people*.** On a freeway, bus or subway, one is closed off to the outside environment, and may even be traveling way above or below the neighbourhoods one whizzes by. In a private car there is even an urge to close all the windows. Turn on the radio, and ignore the local scenes. But one can get a better feel for a local neighborhood by walking. Sights, sounds and smells are all much clearer, and details of such things as structures, then space areas and people come into focus for one who walks. And if one is not in a hurry, it may be interesting to stop and chat with a shopkeeper, school child or friendly neighbour.

*It cannot be argued that walking is also inexpensive.* All it costs is time. Indeed, it costs less in money and mental anguish than driving during rush-hour or fighting for space in a crowded bus or subway. And the time it takes to walk is well worth slowing down for.

*So next time you're fighting traffic on a freeway or trying to find breathing space on a bus, think about taking a walk and getting to know your neighborhood.*

## VOCABULARY REVIEW & SENTENCES CONSTRUCTION

### Go Take a Walk

*allow*: (v) - *to let* (อนุญาตให้, ยอมให้, ปลอ่ยให้)

*Ex. -->*

1. Our teacher **allows** us to have a break for a while.
2. Because Jane qualified she was **allowed** to inhabit the vacant apartment.

**anguish** : (n) - *severe suffering* (ความเจ็บปวด, ความปวดร้าว)

*Ex. -->*

1. The news of bankrupt caused John an **anguish**.
2. She became such a mental **anguish** after she knew that Mark said good bye to her.

**as well** : - *also* (เช่นกัน, ร่วมกัน)

*Ex. -->*

1. She will roam to Hong Kong and Japan **as well**.
2. Before going to work, please leave me a note **as well**.

**breathe:** (v) - take air into *the* body and send it out (หายใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. She went to the beach to **breathe** fresh air.
2. It is circulation that we must **breathe** the air in and out everyday.

**chat:** (v) - friendly talk about unimportant things (สนทนาอย่างกันเอง, คุยกัน)

**Ex.-->**

Let's **chat** about next fancy party, shall we?

**energy:** (n) - powers available for, capacity for (พลังงาน, กำลังงาน)

**Ex.-->**

1. We should save our **energy** for dancing tonight.
2. The wrestler must use much **energy** to win the opponent.

**environment:** (n) - surroundings (สิ่งแวดล้อม)

**Ex.-->**

1. The exhaust of the cars make the **environment** dirty.
2. His new house is between many industries so he doesn't like its **environment**.

**get around:** (v) - to travel (ไปเที่ยว, ท่องเที่ยว)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **gets around** the whole town on an old bicycle.

2. How do you get **around** now that your car is being fixed?

**good for:** - have the necessary energy .....*for*; (ดีสำหรับ, มีประโยชน์สำหรับ)

**Ex.-->**

It's **good for** your mental health to think about good things.

**heartbeat:** (n) - *the movement of the heart's regular motion*

(การเต้นของหัวใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. I always go to have an annual check about my **heartbeats** at the hospital.
2. Jogging in the morning helps **heartbeat** work steadily.

**ignore:** (v) - take no notice of (ละเลย, ไม่สนใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Unless *you ignored* the traffic rule, the accident would not happen.
2. The parents feel lonely because their sons **ignore** them.

**mental:** (adj.) - of or *in* the mind (เกี่ยวกับสมอง, เกี่ยวกับจิตใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Mental** health problems are handled very differently here.
2. **Mental** patient is a person suffering from a diseased mind.

**muscle:** (n) - elastic substance in a body that can *be* tightened or loosened to produce movement (กล้ามเนื้อ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He used balm to massage his painful **muscle** because of too much exercise.
2. One cause of feeble **muscle** and body is being undernourished.

**neighbourhood:** (n) - area near the place (ละแวกบ้าน, ที่อยู่ข้าง 7 )

**Ex.-->**

1. Our parents take us to the country and the **neighbourhood**.
2. Living in the **neighbourhood** of the temples, Jane can give food to the monk every morning.

**pace:** (n, v) - rate of walking, running (ก้าว, เดิน, ฝีเท้า)

**Ex.-->**

A strong horse can keep its steady **pace** in racing track.

**regulate:** (v) - **control by means of a system** (วางระเบียบ, กำหนด)

**Ex.-->**

The authorities **regulate** all the works in the city.

**rush -hour:** - **the** time that everyone **is** traveling to **or from work** (เวลาที่จราจรบนถนนกำลังแออัด)

**Ex.-->**

1. The traffic always jams in the **rush-hour**.
2. We should hurry to leave from the house in the early morning to avoid the **rush-hour**.

**scene..** (n) - view (ภาพภูมิประเทศ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **scene** of a famous battle still reminds me all the time of my marriage.
2. Boats in the harbour making a pretty *scene*.

**sight:** (n) - something seen or to be seen (ภาพ, การเห็น, สิ่งที่เห็น)

**Ex.-->**

1. After falling from the horse back, Nickson lose his *sight*.
2. She likes to see all the **sights** along the beach.

**slow down:** (v, adj.) ~ not quick; at less than the usual speed (ลดลง, ช้า, ค่อย ๆ)

**Ex.-->**

Slow **down** when you drive around this sharp curve.

**smog:** (n) - smoky fog (หมอก)

**Ex.-->**

1. I hardly see the way because of the **smog**.
2. Whenever to see the *smog* in the sky, we always assume that there was a house on fire.

**subway:** (n) - underground electric railway in a town (ทางรถไฟใต้ดิน)

**Ex.-->**

1. If we're in rush-hour, we should travel by *subway*.

2. Thailand may provide the **subway** in the future to relief the traffic congestion.

**urge:** (v) - *strong desire* (กระตุ้น, หมุน, เร่งเร้า)

**Ex.-->**

1. He has an **urge** to travel.
2. Every fighters have **urges** to win the rival.

**whiz:** (v, n) - *sound of something rushing through the air* (เอียงหรือผ่านไป)

**Ex.-->**

1. An arrow **whizzed** past my ear.
2. The racing car **whizzed** along the track.



**ASSIGNMENT 5**

**Directions :** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. ***“How to Become Unpopular”***

**It is more useful to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition. Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.**

# The Jotted Outline

## *How to Become Unpopular*

### **1. Thesis**

*You can easily become unpopular if you are boring, negative, and inconsiderate.*

### **II. Boring**

- talk about uninteresting things (give monologues)
- talk about your parents or children
- interrupt interesting discussions to talk about dull topics
- talk about yourself and your problems
- just sit without participating in talk (have no ideas to offer)
- boring people have monotonous lives
- boring people never spontaneous

### **III. Negative**

- be pessimistic
- complain
- don't ever be content
- be critical
- get angry easily (be physically aggressive)

- confront people with your negative viewpoint
- sow seeds of discontent
- don't listen to others
- be nasty and sarcastic

#### **IV. Inconsiderate**

- only think of yourself
- be pushy
- don't offer anything or share with others
- interrupt people's conversations
- smoke wherever you like
- make noise late at night
- use others only for your gains, physical and emotional
- be insensitive
- self-gratification most important
- don't be kind

#### **V. Conclusion**

***Becoming unpopular is not difficult; you need only be boring, negative, and inconsiderate. With only a little effort you are bound to succeed in this goal.***

### ***How to Become Unpopular***

Many essays have been written on the art of becoming popular, or how to win friends and influence people, but probably few have been written on how to become unpopular. Perhaps such an essay might seem a little absurd because who, in their right mind, would want to become unpopular? Actually, a few individuals might exist who don't want popularity. Some people, such as celebrities or the very rich, might need to go out of their way to become unpopular in order to discourage too many hangers-on. So this essay could be for them, or it could simply be a reverse approach to the subject of how to become popular. Sometimes we learn what to do through learning what not to do. How can you not become popular? ***You can easily become unpopular if you are boring, negative, and inconsiderate.***

***Some people have an ability to be so boring that they make anyone listening to them, or anyone even sitting in their vicinity, fall asleep.*** This is a guaranteed way to become unpopular. Try it sometime. The next time you see a group of people you know, go over to join them. Start talking about some uninteresting topic such as the rainy regions in Canada, or the rising cost of apples, or just go off on some monotonous monologue. See how long it is before everybody has left the table. Or talk endlessly about your parents or your children.

Describe in detail what “little Sally,” your daughter, said today or did yesterday. Cut into an animated philosophical discussion, and introduce some mundane topic which has no relevance to anyone but yourself? Start talking about a topic such as your job, your dentist bills, or redecorating your basement, and then expound upon it unceasingly. Bringing up some current, over-discussed political issue is another sure-fire way to put people to sleep. Or just talk incessantly about yourself and your personal problems. Actually, it isn’t even necessary to talk constantly in order to be boring. Boring people emit a vibration that can be felt. When with a group of people in a discussion, they often just sit there and contribute nothing to the conversation. Or they have no ideas or opinions; when asked, they either look blank or, at the most, after dull ones. They never do anything out of the ordinary, and their lives are pretty much the same, week after week. They watch TV regularly every night, or can be found sitting at the same bar in the same seat, day after day. And they don’t ever show a spontaneous reaction to anything. If you follow the above behavioral tendencies you could easily become a boring person.

***Another excellent way to become unpopular is to be constantly negative.*** Don’t ever be caught with a spark of hope or joy in your eyes. When you talk about anything with other people, always stress the negative side. Strive to be pessimistic as you look at all the dark aspects of anything. Make sure you complain a lot. Complaining means that

wherever you are or whatever the situation, things are always wrong or simply not good enough. Don't ever be satisfied or content with your lot. Always be sure to criticize everything, and everyone about you, and dwell on the bad aspects of everybody's personality. Talk about the things that turn you off in your job or your life in general. You can also develop it volcanic personality. By this is meant that you not only get angry easily, but also you often completely blow up, like a volcano. Being physically aggressive will also aid your unpopularity. Get into fights with strangers, or even friends, and develop a reputation for having this tendency. Confront everyone with your negative point of view, and sow seeds of discontent among co-workers, friends, and family. Talk about people behind their backs. Constantly asserting yourself and pushing your opinions on those about you, while refusing to see or listen to another's point of view, can bring an absence of friends. Being hasty and sarcastic all the time will be of great help also. If you train yourself in the above ways, you can be sure that others will avoid you like they would avoid a rabid tiger.

**A third way not to be popular is to be inconsiderate.** It's not hard to be inconsiderate. It takes very little effort: simply, think only of yourself all the time. When there's a line-up for a bus, push to be the first. If you see a vacant seat, race with an old lady to get it. Don't ever offer anything to anyone, or even share what you have. Interrupt people to talk about yourself and your problems, not considering that their

discussion might have been important at all. Smoke in crowded places because you like smoking. Make noise late at night while others are trying to sleep, and get angry when they finally complain. See your fellow men simply as serving or blocking your potential gains, and feel justified in using others only for what you want. This attitude can be expanded to also include the emotional realm. Be rude, or simply insensitive to others' feelings or act as if they don't have any or that others don't really count at all. Look at others which are a challenge for your desire to succeed. Aim to conquer and win someone's trust and affection in order to gratify your ego, which enjoys a challenge. Don't allow the idea of human kindness to ever even enter your mind. And don't ever pass up a chance to fulfill your own desires at someone else's expense. If you keep all of the above in mind, you are sure to end up with no friends.

'Becoming unpopular is not a difficult task. It is actually very easy; unfortunately, too easy. ***Just remember that if you are boring, negative, and inconsiderate, you will probably find that after some time your friends have greatly diminished, and after even more time has passed, you have no friends at all.*** With only a little effort, you are bound to be successful in your goal.

## VOCABULARY REVIEW &amp; SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

---

*How to Become Unpopular*


---

**ability** : (n) - **the power or skill to do something** (ความสามารถ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Man is the only animal that has the **ability** to speak.
2. Jim has great **ability** as a singer.

**absence** : (n) - a being **away**; a lack; being without (ไม่อยู่, ลาหยุด, จากไป, ขาดไป, ไม่มี)

**Ex.-->**

1. In the teacher's **absence**, a substitute teacher look over the class.
2. **Absence** of rain caused the plants to die.

**absurd** : (adj.) - **silly** (โง่เขลา)

**foolish** (เบาปัญญา)

- **so unreasonable as to be laughable** (เหลวไหลน่าหัวเราะเยาะ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Your story is too **absurd** to believe.
2. It is **absurd** to believe that the moon is made of green cheese.



**actually** : (adv.) – in fact; really (ที่จริง, แท้จริง)

Ex.-->

1. He said that he stayed home because he was sick, but **actually** he wanted to watch the baseball game on television.
2. He looks honest, but **actually** he is a rogue.

**affectation** : (n) – a feeling of love (ความพอใจ, ความรักใคร่ชอบพอ)

Ex.-->

1. When you feel **affectation** for people, you like them very much and care about what happens to them.
2. He had a deep **affectation** for his sister and brother.

**aggressive** : (n) – being warlike and ready to attack without a good reason; very forceful and bold (รุก, รุกราน, ก้าวร้าว)

Ex.-->

1. He is so **aggressive** that others avoid him.
2. An **aggressive** salesman does not easily accept “no” for an answer.

**aid** : (v) – to give help or support (ช่วยเหลือ, อนุเคราะห์, อุปถัมภ์)

Ex.-->

1. Jim **aided** the farmer in his search for the lost cattle.
2. Two boy scouts **aided** us in putting up the tent.

**aim** : (v) - to direct; direct one's efforts toward a purpose (มุ่งหมาย)

Ex.-->

1. The hunter **aimed** at the deer but missed him.
2. She **aimed** at perfection.

**allow** : (v) - to give permission to do or have something; permit (ยอมให้, อนุญาตให้)

Ex.-->

1. His father does not **allow** him to ride his bicycle on the lawn.
2. Smoking is not **allowed** in that theatre.

**among** : (preps.) - surrounded by; in the middle of (ในหมู่, ในจำนวน, ในระหว่าง, ในจำพวก)

Ex.-->

1. A village is **among** the hills.
2. I saw him **among** the crowd.

**animate** : (adj.) - living, lively (มีชีวิต)

(v) - give life to; make lively inspire (ทำให้มีชีวิต, ร่าเริง, กระปรี้กระเปร่า)

Ex.-->

1. A smile **animated** her face.
2. There was an **animated** discussion.

**approach** : (n) - a way of doing something; a way of reaching a place  
or person (ใกล้เข้ามาทุกที, เข้าไปใกล้, จวนจะถึง)

**Ex.-->**

1. His **approach** to training his gut was to be very patient.
2. The only **approach** to the town was blocked by snow.

**art** : (n) - a special skill (ลักษณะพิเศษ)  
- ability, or craft (ความสามารถ, ฝีมือ)

**Ex.-->**

1. She has an **art** for making people feel at ease.
2. The **art** of cooking came easily to him.

**asleep** : (adv.) - into a condition of sleep (นอนหลับ, หลับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Grandfather fell **asleep** while he was watching television.
2. He dropped **asleep** during the sermon.

**aspect** : (n) - a particular way in which something can be looked at and  
thought about; look; appearance (ประเด็น, แง่มุม, ภาพลักษณ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. The deserted old house had such a gloomy **aspect** that the children were afraid to go near it.
2. The mayor's committee considered every **aspect** of the effect of pollution on the city.

**assert** : (v) - to insist in; claim (ยืนยัน, อ้าง, ถือสิทธิ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. Every citizen must **assert** his rights.
2. My little brother **asserted** his independence by demanding that he be allowed to walk to school by himself.

**attitude** : (n) - a way of thinking, acting or feeling (ท่าที, กริยาท่าทาง, อาการ, การวางตัว, ทศนคติ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Tom's **attitude** towards school is more enthusiastic than mine.
2. He took a sympathetic **attitude** toward my problems.

**avoid** : (v) - to keep away from (หลบหลีก, หลีกหนี, หลีกเลียง)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **avoids** me because he owes me money.
2. We took a back road to **avoid** the heavy traffic on the highway.

**become** : (v) - come to be (กลายเป็น, มาเป็น)

**Ex.-->**

1. The seeds will **become** flowers in the summer.
2. Tadpoles **become** frogs.

**behavior** : (n) - a way of acting (พฤติกรรม)

**Ex.-->**

1. The children's **behavior** was good.
2. His unkind **behavior** offended other people.

**blow up** : (idiom) - lose one's temper (ระเบิดอารมณ์)

**Ex.-->**

When his secretary asked for the day off, Mr. Smith, with so much work piled up front of him, **blew up**.

**bore** : (v) - to make very tired by being uninteresting and dull (ทำให้เบื่อ, น่าเบื่อ)

**Ex.-->**

1. People who talk about themselves all the time **bore** me.
2. Bill always **bores** his friends by telling them the same jokes over and over again.

**bound** : (adj.) - certain; sure (แน่นอน, แน่ใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The team is **bound** to lose the game if the players don't practice.
2. He is **bound** to succeed.

**celebrity** : (n), (pl.) celebrities (คนที่มียศชื่อเสียง)

*famous or well-known people*

**Ex.-->**

1. There were many **celebrities** at the opening of the new movie.

2. All the **celebrities** of the London theatre, all the famous actors and actresses performing in London.

**challenge** : (n) - a call to take part in a contest or fight; something that calls for work, effort (ความท้าทาย)

Ex.-->

1. He thought of his new job as a **challenge**.
2. Our football team has accepted their team's **challenge**.

**complain** : (v) - to say that something is wrong; find fault; to make an accusation or charge (กล่าวโทษในสิ่งที่ไม่พอใจ)

Ex.-->

1. My father **complains** that his train is never on time.
2. We **complained** to the police about our noisy neighbors.

**completely** : (adv.) - wholly; thoroughly; perfectly (สำเร็จ, สมบูรณ์, เต็มที่)

Ex.-->

1. Anne was **completely** exhausted after skiing all day.
2. Jim was being **completely** honest when he told the teacher that he had not tripped Pam on purpose.

**confront** : (v) - to meet or face; bring face to face with; be or come face to face with (เผชิญหน้า)

Ex.-->

1. The prisoner was **confronted** with his accusers.

2. When **confronted** with the evidence of his guilt, he confessed at once.

**consider** : (v)- *to think* carefully before deciding (พิจารณา, คำนึงถึง, ระลึกรู้ถึง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Tom's older sister will **consider** going to college.
2. Please **consider** my suggestion.

**constant** : (adj.) not changing (คงที่)

**Ex.-->**

1. The nice weather has been **constant** all week.
2. The boy's **constant** talking made the teacher angry.

**content** : (adj.)- happy and satisfied (มีความสุข, พอใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Bill and Jane are not **content** to stay home and play games on rainy days.
2. Are you **content** with your present salary?

**contribute** : (v) - *to give* (ช่วยเหลือ, สนับสนุน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The townspeople **contributed** food and clothing to the family whose house had burned down.
2. The children **contributed** ideas for the school picnic.

**conquer** : (v) - to defeat; to overcome (พิชิต, ได้ชัยชนะ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The army *conquered* the small country.
2. He tried to *conquer* the habit of biting his nails.

**con versa tion** : (n) - a friendly **and informal talk** (การสนทนา, ปรกศรีย)

**Ex.-->**

1. Joan and Sara had a long *conversation* about their summer vacations.
2. *No conversation* while I'm playing the piano, please.

**cost** : (n) - **an amount of money paid or charged for something; price**  
(ราคา, มุลค่า)

**Ex.-->**

1. The cost of that book is five dollars.
2. The cost of the hat was high.

**criticize** : (v) - **to find fault with something; to say what is good or bad**  
about something (วิพากษวิจารณ์, ดีเตียน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Peggy *criticized* her brother's table manners.
2. His job on television is to *criticise* new movies.



**crowd** : (n) - a large number of people gathered together (ฝูงชน, กลุ่มคน)

**Ex.-->**

1. There was a **crowd** of people waiting to get into the theatre.
2. He pushed his way through the **crowd**.

**current** : (n) - course or movement (of events, opinions, thoughts, etc.) (ปัจจุบัน, ประจําวัน, เหตุการณ์, ความคิดที่เป็นอยู่ในขณะนั้น)

**Ex.-->**

1. Nothing disturbs the peaceful **current** of her life.
2. The government used the radio to influence the **current** of thought.

**daughter** : (n) - a female child (ลูกสาว)

**Ex.-->**

1. She is the older **daughter**.
2. Mary is a girl, she is the **daughter** of her mother and father.

**describe** : (v) - say what is *like*; to give a picture of something in words; tell *or* write about (พรรณนา, บรรยาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. Can you **describe** the man you saw at the window?
2. Please **describe** what you saw.

**desire** : (n) - thing that is wished for (ความปรารถนา, ต้องการ, ประสงค์)

**Ex.-->**

1. The cold and hungry men had a **desire** for a bowl of hot soup.
2. I hope you will get all your heart's **desires**, all you wish for.

**detail : (n)** - a *small, particular fact or item* (รายละเอียด, ข้อปลีกย่อย)

**Ex.-->**

1. The newspaper gave few **details** about the accident.
2. Please give me all the **details**.

**develop : (v)** - (**cause** to) grow *larger*; build; slowly make or **create**  
(**&ml**, ขยาย, ก้าวหน้า)

**Ex.-->**

1. Mary **developed** her love for music by listening to it every day.
2. He **developed** his muscles by exercising.

**difficult : (n)** - not easy; requiring effort, *skill* or ability (ยาก, ลำบาก)

**Ex.-->**

1. The sound is **difficult** to pronounce.
2. He finds it **difficult** to stop smoking.

! - -

**diminish : (v)** - **become less** (ทำให้ลดน้อยลง)

**Ex.-->**

1. A war that seriously **diminished** the country's wealth.

2. Just remember that if you are boring, negative, and inconsiderate, you will probably find that after some time your friends have greatly **diminished**.

**discontent** : (n) - a *feeling* of not being satisfied; dissatisfaction  
(ความไม่พอใจ)

**discontented** : (adj.) - (ไม่พอใจ)

Ex.-->

1. Bob feels **discontented** with his new job.
2. Ann started looking for a new job because she was **discontented** with the one she had.

**discourage** : (v) - to cause to lose courage or confidence; try to keep a person from doing something (ทำให้ท้อแท้, ท้อใจ)

Ex.-->

1. His father's criticism **discouraged** the boy.
2. Don't let one failure **discourage you**.

**discussion** : (n) - the act of talking something over; talk for the purpose of discussing (examine and argue about a subject).  
(การสนทนา, โต้ตอบ, โต้เถียง)

Ex.-->

1. We had a long **discussion** about the question.
2. When will the matter come up for **discussion**?

**dull** : (adj.) - slow *in* understanding; uninteresting; boring; not exciting  
(ah, ทึบ, ไม่สดใส, น่าเบื่อ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The movie was so **dull** that Jim left before it was over.
2. A person would have to be very **dull** not to understand that joke.

**dwell on** : (v) - think, speak *or* write *at length* about; *think* hard about  
(คิด, สาธยาย, คิดหรือวิตกกังวลจนเกินไป)

**Ex.-->**

1. She always **dwells** on the bad aspects of everybody's personality.
2. The boys **dwell on** the subject of football a long time.

**easily** : (adv.) - *without trying hard* (อย่างง่ายดาย)

**Ex:-->**

1. I can touch my toes **easily**.
2. You can **easily** become unpopular if you are boring, negative, and inconsiderate.

**easy** : (adj.) - not hard to do; without worry (ง่าย)

**Ex.-->**

1. The math problems were **easy**.
2. The **easy** work is done quickly.

**effort** : (n) - hard **work**; a hard **try** (ความมานะ, ความพยายาม)

Ex.-->

1. Please make an **effort** to arrive early.
2. Does it require a great **effort** of will to give up smoking?

ego : (n) - all **of** one's **own** thoughts and feelings; one's own self;

**admiration for oneself** (ตัวของตัวเอง, ความคิด, ความรู้สึกของตัวเอง)

Ex.-->

1. The ego is the inner part of a person that makes him or her different from other people.
2. That famous actor is known for his ego.

**emotional** : (adj.) - **having to do with the emotions or feelings a person has** (อารมณ์)

Ex.-->

1. **Emotional** problems kept him from doing as good a job as he usually did.
2. My aunt is an **emotional** person who always cries during sad movies.

**endless** : (adj. ) - having **no** limit or end; going on **forever**; without **ends** (อย่างไม่สิ้นสุด, ไม่รู้จักจบ)

**endlessly** : (adv.)

Ex.-->

1. There were **endless** miles of desert as far as the eye could see.

2. Our teacher has endless patience and never loses her temper.

**enjoy** : (v) - to get joy *or* pleasure from; *be* happy *with* (ได้รับความพอใจ  
จาก, มีความสุข)

**Ex.-->**

1. The whole family **enjoys** going to the beach.
2. I've **enjoyed** talking to you about old times.

**essay** : (n) - a short *written composition on a subject* (เรียงความ, ร้อยแก้ว)

**Ex.-->**

1. Sally wrote an essay about the need for world peace.
2. The students write essays about the importance of education.

**excellent** : (adj.) - *very, very good* (ดีเยี่ยม)

**Ex.-->**

1. She is an excellent student.
2. Another **excellent** way to become unpopular is to be constantly negative.

**exist** : (v) - *to have life; live; to be* (มีชีวิตอยู่, คงอยู่)

**Ex.-->**

1. Man cannot **exist** for long without water.
2. We cannot **exist** without food and water.

**expand** : (v) - make or become larger or spread out (แผ่, แผ่กว้าง, ขยาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. A tire **expands** when you pump air into it.
2. His face **expanded** to a smile of welcome.

**expense** : (n) - money spent to buy or do something; cost; a cause or reason *for* spending *money* (ค่าใช้จ่าย)

**Ex.-->**

1. My father cannot afford the **expense** of a new car.
2. Building the swimming pool was a big **expense**.

**felt** : (v) - to have or cause *the sense of* being something (รู้สึก)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **felt** happy when he thought of his new bicycle.
2. You will **feel** better after a night's sleep.

**few** : (adj.) *not* many (จำนวนน้อย, สองสามคน)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Few** people came to the meeting.
2. A **few** friends came early.

**finally** : (adv.) - at the end; at last (สุดท้าย, ในที่สุด)

**Ex.-->**

1. We **finally** finished our homework.

2. Make noise late at night while others are trying to sleep, and get angry when they **finally** explain.

*follow* : (v) - *to act according to; obey* (ปฏิบัติตาม)

**Ex.-->**

1. Follow the instruction on the package.
2. He **followed** his father's advice.

*fulfill* : (v) - *to carry out or finish; to meet or satisfy* (ตรงกับความต้องการ, บรรลุ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Jack was not hired for the job because he did not **fulfill** all the requirements.
2. Jim quickly **fulfilled** his chores for the day and went home early.

**gain** : (n) - *something gained* (ได้รับ, มีชัยชนะ)

**Ex.-->** The football player made a **gain** of ten yards.

*goal* : (n) - *something that a person wants and tries to get or become; aim; purpose* (จุดหมาย, หลักชัย)

**Ex.-->**

1. Jim's goal in life is to become a doctor.
2. My *goal* in life is to be a good teacher.



**gratify** : (v) - give pleasure or satisfaction to; give what *is* desired to  
(ก่อให้เกิดความอึดใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. We were all **gratified** with the result.
2. Sally was **gratified** when her teacher praised her report.

**great** : (adj.) - more *than* is usual; much (ยิ่งใหญ่, ประเสริฐ, เลิศ)

**Ex.-->**

1. We'll never forget her **great** kindness to us when our mother was ill.
2. He is a **great** friend of mine.

**guarantee** : (n) - a promise to make good if something or someone does not bring satisfactory; a promise that something will satisfy in a *certain way*. (ใบรับประกัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The jeweler **gave us** a **guarantee** on the watch.
2. This **guarantee** lets me return the radio within ten days if it does not perform well.

**hope** : (n) - a strong wish and *belief* that a thing will happen; something *that* is wished for (ความหวัง)

**Ex:-->**

1. His **hope** is that he will be elected captain of the team.

2. Allen is full of hope that he will go to college.

**idea** : (n) - thought; picture in the mind; plan; **purpose**; opinion  
(ความคิด)

Ex.-->

1. This book gives me a good **idea** of life in ancient Greece.
2. That man is full of new **ideas**.

**important** : (adj.) - having great **value and meaning of great influence**;  
**having a great effect** (สำคัญ)

Ex.-->

1. A proper diet is **important** to good health.
2. Grain is an **important** crop in the United States.

**incessant** : (adj.) - **often repeated; continual** (ไม่หยุดหย่อน, เรื้อร 7)

**incessantly**: (adv.)

Ex.-->

1. The **incessant** barking of the dog kept him awake.
2. Mary talks **incessantly** about herself and her personal problems.

**include** : (v) - bring **in**; as **part of the whole**; contain (รวมทั้ง)

Ex.-->

1. This Atlas contains fifty maps, **including** six of North America.
2. Your duties will **include** putting the children to bed.

**inconsiderate** : (adj.) – (of a person, his action) thoughtless; lacking in regard for the feelings *of others* (ไม่คำนึงถึง, ไม่พิจารณาถึงความรู้สึกของคนอื่น)

**Ex.-->**

1. You can easily become unpopular if you are **inconsiderate**.
2. Jimmy is **inconsiderate** child.

**individual** : (n) – a *single* person or thing (ส่วนบุคคล, เฉพาะบุคคล)

**Ex.-->**

1. He is a strange **individual**.
2. Actually, a few **individuals** might exist who don't want popularity.

**influence** : (n) – *the power of* a person *or* thing to produce *an* effect on others; *a* person *or* thing that has the power to produce *an* effect on others (อำนาจชักจูง, อิทธิพล)

**Ex.-->**

1. Use your influence to persuade your brother to study harder.
2. Her friends were a good **influence** on her.

**insensitive** : (adj.) – *not* sensitive (to touch, light, *not* easily affected by the. feelings *of* other people) (ไม่มีความรู้สึก)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **insensitive** boy does not become upset if he is criticized.
2. An **insensitive** nerve in a tooth cannot cause great pain.

**interrupt** : (v) break the continuity of; break in upon (a person's action, speech, etc.) (ขัดจังหวะ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Traffic was **interrupted** by floods.
2. Don't **interrupt** me while I'm busy.

**introduce** : (v) - to bring into use, knowledge, or notice (แนะนำ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The teacher **introduced** his young pupils to the intricacies of geometry.
2. His boss **introduce** new ideas into a business.

**job** : (n) - work; employment; a duty (งาน)

**Ex.-->**

1. A mother has many different **jobs** to do every day.
2. His **job** pays him enough money to buy food and clothes.

**join** : (v) - come into the company of; associate with (เข้าร่วม, พบ)

**Ex.-->**

1. I will **join** you in a few minutes.
2. Will you **join** us in a walk, come with us?

**joy** : (n) deep pleasure; great gladness; something that gives joy;  
occasion of great happiness (ความสุข, ความสนุกสนาน, ความรื่นเริง)

**Ex.-->**

1. I wish you **joy**.
2. He has been a good friend to me both in **joy** and in sorrow.

**justify** : (v) - show that (a person, statement, act, etc.) is right,  
reasonable or proper; be a good reason *for* (ให้เหตุผล, แสดง  
ความบริสุทธิ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. The Prime Minister **justified** the action of the Government.
2. Your wish to go for a walk does not **justify** your leaving the  
baby alone in the house.

**keep in mind** : (idiom) - not to forget, remember (จำได้)

**Ex.-->**

1. Please **keep in mind** that you promised to call your patient at  
two o'clock.
2. "You should bear in mind that he is not as strong as he used  
to be."  
"O.K., I'll **keep in mind**."

**kindness** : (n) - kind nature; being kind; perform a kind act (desire to  
*help others or be good to them*) (ความเมตตา, กรุณา)

**Ex.-->**

1. He has shown me many **kindnesses**.
2. He did it **all** out of **kindness**, not in the hope of reward.

**learn** : (v) - *gain knowledge of or skill in, by study, practice or bring taught* (เรียนรู้, เรียน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Has he **learnt** his lessons?
2. Some boys **learn** slowly.

**listen** : (v) - *try to hear; pay attention* (ฟัง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The boys heard their father's voice but were not listening to what he was saying.
2. Please listen carefully for the telephone while I'm upstairs.

**lot** : (n) - *the whole number or quantity; a great amount of number* (มากมาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. She spends a lot of money on clothes.
2. There were **such a** lot of people in the shops.

**mean** : (v) - *a sign of; be likely to result in; refer to* (หมายความว่า)

**Ex.-->**

1. A dictionary tries to tell you what words **mean**.
2. This new frontier incident probably **means** was that there will be war.

**monologue** : (n) - a long speech by one person in a conversation (การพูดคนเดียว)

Ex.-->

Boring people always make **monologues** in their conversation.

**monotonous** : (adj.) - not interesting because it does not change in any way without *variety*; unchanging (เสียงเดียว, ไม่มีเสียงสูงเสียงต่ำ)

Ex.-->

1. His **monotonous** voice never changes in tone.
2. His job was **monotonous** because he did the same thing over and over.

**mundane** : (adj.) - worldly; earthy (เกี่ยวกับโลกมนุษย์, กิจของมนุษย์)

Ex.-->

When a man is near death he loses interest in **mundane** affairs.

**nasty**: (adj.) - coming from hate or spite (ร้ายแรง)

- disagreeable (ไม่เห็นด้วย)

- unpleasant (ไม่พอใจ)

- harmful or severe (บาดเจ็บ, อันตรายหรือรุนแรง)

Ex.-->

1. That **nasty** rumor about my friend is not true.
2. Sandy took a **nasty** fall when he was skiing last weekend.

**necessary** : (adj.) – that cannot be done without; needed; required; that cannot be avoided; certain (จำเป็น, สิ่งจำเป็น)

**Ex.-->**

1. Proper food and rest are **necessary** for the elder people.
2. Low grades were a **necessary** result of the student's poor work.

**need** : (v) – want; require (ต้องการ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Does he **need** any help?
2. This chapter **needs** rewriting.

**negative** : (adj.) – expressing refusal disagreeing (ปฏิเสธ)

**Ex.-->**

1. His **negative** reply meant I could not go.
2. You can easily become unpopular if you are boring, **negative**, and inconsiderate.

**noise** : (n) – a sound that is loud and harsh; any sound (เสียงอึกทึก)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **noise** of the traffic outside the window made it hard to sleep.
2. I heard a **noise** in the bushes.

**object** : (n) – a thing that is wanted or aimed at; purpose; goal  
(วัตถุ, วัตถุประสงค์)



**Ex.-->**

1. The **object** of this telephone call was to invite me to the party.
2. Look at others as **objects** which are a challenge for your desire to succeed.

**offer** : (v) – to present to be accepted; to show a desire to do or give something (เสนอ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **offered** his suggestions for the party.
2. She **offered** to help me with the ironing.

**opinion** : (n) – a belief that is based on what a person thinks rather than on what is proved or known to be true (ความเห็น)

**Ex.-->**

1. It is my **opinion** that he will win the race.
2. What is your **opinion** of that movie?

**ordinary** : (adj.) – usual; common; regular (โดยปกติ, ธรรมดา, สามัญ)

**Ex.-->**

1. This is not an **ordinary** day but a holiday.
2. Her **ordinary** tone of voice is very soft.

**pass** : (v) – to use or spend time; go by; be spent (ผ่าน, ผ่านไป)

**Ex.-->**

1. Fallen **passed** the hour she had to wait by reading a newspaper.

2. Six months **passed** and still we had no news of them.

**personal** : (adj.) – private; not public; done or made in person (ส่วนตัว)

**Ex.-->**

1. My diary is **personal** and other people should not read it without permission.
2. The famous actress made a **personal** appearance at the first showing of her new movie.

**personality** : (n) – all of a person's characteristics, habits; behavior, and other qualities (บุคลิกลักษณะ)

**Ex.-->**

1. A person's **personality** makes him or her different from everybody else.
2. Jane is very easy to get along with because he has such a friendly **personality**.

**pessimistic** : (adj.) – looking on the bad side of things; expecting the worst (มองดูในแง่ร้าย)

**Ex.-->**

Since our best player was out sick, we were all **pessimistic** about winning the game.

**political** : (adj.) – of or having to do with politics, politicians, or government (การเมือง)

**Ex.-->**

1. She belongs to a **political** party.
2. Democracy is one kind of **political** system.

**popular** : (adj.) – pleasing to very many people; having many friends;  
well-liked; accepted by many people (มีคนที่ชอบมาก,  
มีชื่อเสียง)

**Ex.-->**

1. This beach is a **popular** place to go on summer afternoon.
2. Bill is **popular** at school.

**popularity** : (n) – the state of being popular (ความมีชื่อเสียง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Janny's **popularity** at school was due to her friendly, happy nature.
2. The **popularity** of baseball in Japan has been grown enormously.

**potential** : (adj.) – able to exist or happen; possible (สามารถจะเป็นได้)

**Ex.-->**

1. That popular girl is a **potential** leader in our class.
2. He hasn't realized his full **potential** yet.

**pretty** : (adj.) – sweetly pleasing; attractive; charming (น่ารัก)

**Ex.-->**

1. His sister is very **pretty**.
2. The artist painted a **pretty** picture.

**probably** : (adv.) – almost surely; most likely (น่าจะเป็น, ค่อนข้างแน่)

**Ex.-->**

1. We will **probably** go on a trip this summer.
2. Jim's late; he's **probably** stuck in a traffic jam.

**problem** : (n) – a question or condition that is difficult to deal with or that has not been solved (ปัญหา)

**Ex.-->**

1. There were ten **problems** on the arithmetic test.
2. Rising prices are a serious **problem** in our country today.

**race** : (v) – to take part in a contest of speed; to move or go very fast (วิ่งแข่ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The two boys **raced** each other to school.
2. Father **raced** the motor of his car.

**reaction** : (n) – an action in response to something that has happened or has been done; result (แสดงอาการโต้ตอบ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Did you see his **reaction** to her arrival?
2. What was his mother's **reaction** when she saw his report card?

**realm** : (n) – an area or field of interest, knowledge, or power; or area over which some influence or activity extends (ราชอาณาจักร, แผ่นดิน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Betty likes to read about almost anything in the **realm** of science.
2. She has read many books about the **realm** of magic.

**refuse** : (v) – say “no” to (a request or offer); show unwillingness to accept something offered, something that one is asked to do (ปฏิเสธ)

**Ex.-->**

1. His father **refused** to let him stay up late.
2. They **refused** me permission.

**regularly** : (adv.) – regular (อย่างสม่ำเสมอ)

(adj.) – usual, normal; happening again and again at the same time (ประจำ, ปกติ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Our **regular** teacher was absent today.
2. We went to Canada as part of our **regular** summer vacation.

**relevance** : (n)

**relevant** : (adj.) – connected with what is happening; connected with what is being discussed (สัมพันธ์กัน, เข้าเรื่องกัน)

Ex.-->

1. In become unpopular, you should introduce some mundane topic which has no **relevance** to anyone by yourself.
2. His question about Christopher Columbus was **relevant** to our discussion of explorers.

**reputation** : (n) – what most people think of a person or thing (ชื่อเสียง, กิตติศัพท์)

Ex.-->

1. That judge has a **reputation** for always being fair and honest.
2. Cheating on the last ruined the girl's **reputation**.

**reverse** : (n) – contrary or opposite in direction; backward or upside down (กลับด้าน, ตรงกันข้าม)

Ex.-->

1. He read the numbers in **reverse** order.
2. The king's picture is on the **reverse** side of the coin.

**rude** : (adj.) – showing intentionally bad manners or lack of respect (of others); impolite; crude (หยาบคาย)

Ex.-->

1. His **rude** interruptions of the speaker lost him supporters.

2. She gave a very **rude** answer to my question.

**same** : (adj.) – not changed; identical to (อย่างเดียวกัน, อันเดียวกัน, คนเดียวกัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The condition of the sick man is the **same** as it was yesterday.
2. Ann is the **same** kind, friendly person she was a year ago.

**sarcastic** : (adj.) - using sharp, bitter remarks that are meant to hurt or make fun of someone or something (เย้ยหยัน, ถากถาง)

**Ex.-->** June's **sarcastic** answer hurt her friend's feelings.

**satisfy** : (v) – to meet the needs and desires of; to make free from doubt; convince (ทำให้พอใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The sandwich was enough to **satisfy** Bellen's hunger until dinner.
2. Alice's explanation of why she was late **satisfied** her parents.

**seat** : (n) – something to sit on; a place to sit (ที่นั่ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. bring two more chairs so we will have enough **seats** for everyone.
2. I couldn't get a **seat** on the bus.

**share** : (v) – to use with another or others; to divide into portions and give to others as well as to oneself. (แบ่งส่วน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The two friends **shared** a tent on their camping trip.
2. Jerry **shared** his lunch with two friends.

**simply** : (adv.) – in a natural and honest way; without decoration; in a simple (easy to understand; not difficult) (ง่าย ๆ)

**Ex.-->**

1. She did the work **simply** and quickly.
2. The lecturer spoke **simply** and to the point.

**situation** : (n) – a condition or state of affairs; circumstance (สถานการณ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. Ted found himself in a difficult **situation** when his car ran out of gas on a deserted country road.
2. The political **situation** is very complicated.

**spark** : (a small amount: trace; a suggestion (ประกาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **spark** of interest showed in his eyes.
2. The boys showed a **spark** of interest when someone interested a canoe trip.



**spontaneous** : (adj.) – not planned or forced; without plan, effort or thought (โดยไม่มีใครกระตุ้น, โดยธรรมชาติ)

Ex.-->

1. The children's laughter was **spontaneous**.
2. Nothing he says is **spontaneous**.

**start** : (v) – to set out or make a beginning on something (เริ่มต้น)

Ex.-->

1. What time does the game **start**?
2. The family **start** their trip.

**stranger** : (n) – a person whom one does not know; a person from another place or country (คนแปลกหน้า)

Ex.-->

1. **Strangers** moved into the house next door to ours.
2. We were **strangers** when we first moved to the town.

**stress** : (v) – emphasize; a special importance (เน้นหนัก)

Ex.-->

1. He **stressed** the need for understanding between nations.
2. Mother puts much **stress** on good table manners.

**strive** : (v) – to make a great effort; try hard (พยายามต่อสู้, พยายาม)

Ex.-->

1. Alice always **strives** to win in tennis.

2. We must **strive** to finish the job today.

**subject** : (n) – something thought or talked about (หัวข้อเรื่อง, วิชา)

Ex.-->

1. The **subject** of Tim's report is "My Hobbies."
2. Ann's favorite **subjects** in school are arithmetic and spelling.

**succeed** : (v) – reach one's object or desires; accomplish one's aim  
(ประสบความสำเร็จ, บรรลุจุดประสงค์)

Ex.-->

1. He **succeeded** in reaching home before the rain started.
2. We know that she will **succeed** when she grows up.

**successful** : (adj.) – having success (เป็นผลสำเร็จ)

Ex.-->

1. The writer's book was **successful** and sold many copies.
2. My aunt is a **successful** lawyer.

**talk** : (v) – to express ideas by using speech; speak; to discuss (พูด)

Ex.-->

1. The baby cannot **talk** yet.
2. My grandmother loves to **talk** politics.

**task** : (n) – a piece of work to be done (งานที่ต้องใช้กำลังสติปัญญา)

Ex.-->

1. Writing that long book report was quite a **task**.
2. The president has to perform many **tasks**.

**tendency** : (n) – a natural or usual leaning or inclination (โอนเอียง, มีนิสัยชอบ)

**Ex.-->**

1. My brother has a **tendency** to get angry if he is criticized.
2. She has a **tendency** to talk too much.

**topic** : (n) – what something about (เรื่อง, หัวข้อเรื่อง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The subject of a book, or discussion is its **topic**.
2. The senator spoke on the **topic** “How to Save Our Forests.”

**train** : (v) – to develop or influence a person’s thoughts; behavior, or character; to teach or learn how to do something (ฝึกหัด, สอน, อบรม)

**Ex.-->**

1. The parents **trained** their children to respect the rights and feelings of others.
2. We **trained** the dog to bark when it wants to go out.

**trust** : (n) – belief or confidence in someone or something (ความเชื่อใจ, ความไว้วางใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. I have complete **trust** in his honesty.

2. Donny's parents have **trust** in him.

**try** : (v) – to make an effort to do something (พยายาม)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **tried** moving the box alone, but it was too heavy.
2. Please **try** not to be late.

**unpopular** : (adj.) – not generally liked or accepted (ไม่มีชื่อเสียง, ไม่เป็นที่นิยม)

**Ex.-->**

1. He was afraid he might be **unpopular** at his new school.
2. The politician had a number of ideas that were **unpopular** with the writers.

**vacant** : (adj.) – not having anyone, or anything in it; empty (ว่าง, ปราศจาก)

**Ex.-->**

1. You can sit in the **vacant** chair.
2. The house on the corner is **vacant**.

**vibration** : (n) – rapid movement back and forth or up and down (การสั่นสะเทือน)

**Ex.-->**

1. People many miles away could feel the **vibration** from the earthquake.

2. The ship's engines even at full speed cause very little **vibration**.

**vicinity** : (n) – the area near or surrounding a particular place (ใกล้เคียง, ใกล้ ๆ)

**Ex.-->**

1. There are several parks and playgrounds in the **vicinity** of our house.
2. We live in the **vicinity** of the school.

**watch** : (v) – to look at a person or thing carefully (มองดู)

**Ex.-->**

1. The little boy **watched** television all afternoon.
2. **Watch** closely while I show you how to run the washing machine.

**way** : (n) – a method for doing or getting something; something that a person wants to have or do; wish (เป้าหมาย, จุดประสงค์)

**Ex.-->**

1. She taught of a **way** to solve the puzzle.
2. He becomes angry if he cannot have his **way**.

**week** : (n) – a period of seven days; the part of a seven-day period during which a person works or goes to school (สัปดาห์)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **week** is usually thought of as starting with Sunday.
2. Bill doesn't watch television much during the **week** because he has to study.

**whatever** : (pron., adj.) (อะไรก็ตาม, อย่างไรก็ตาม)

Ex.-->

1. Take **whatever** you want to eat from the refrigerator.
2. **Whatever** you say, he still won't come to the party.

**wherever** : (adv.; conj.) (ที่ใดก็ตาม, ทุกแห่ง)

Ex.-->

1. **Wherever** did you buy that hat?
2. I will go **wherever** you go.

**win** : (v) - to do better than any other person in a race or contest; to get by effort; gain; be successful or victorious (ชนะ, ได้มาซึ่งชัยชนะ)

Ex.-->

1. Don is very good card player and **wins** often.
2. He **won** fame as an author.

**wrong** : (adj.) - not correct or true; not normal or good; bad (ผิด, ไม่ถูกต้อง)

Ex.-->

1. Her answer to the question was **wrong**.
2. It was **wrong** of him to steal.

---

**ASSIGNMENT 6**

---

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from  
*this given topic.* **“International Marriage in Thai Society”**

***It is more practical and logical to do  
your own outline either the jotted or the  
sentence before starting to write your  
unified composition.***

***Your composition must consist of not  
less than three support paragraphs.***

---

### **International Marriage in Thai Society**

---

As we have discussed earlier, western man have come to appreciate the traditional virtue of Asian women including Thais. John Lennon began the trend by marrying Yoko, a Japanese artist. Later, both Chinese and Japanese women were popular and finally, Thai women had a chance. Simultaneously, perhaps, Asian woman realized both that they were popular and that western men had a better character than their Asian counterparts. The following reasons can be considered as the causes for international marriage in Thai society. Due to continually developing economics, Thai people still regard foreign countries as more affluent. ***Marrying a foreigner can also be a way to leave home for a better future. Most importantly, many foreign nationals have better habits than Thais.***

***Thai economics are still progressing and most of the population are still in poverty; therefore, they consider that foreign countries especially the United States are more affluent.*** Generally, the misunderstanding developed from ignorance about finance. Poor people rarely see more than a few baht at any one moment in their lives and thereby consider that even one thousand baht is “wealthy”. Furthermore, the wealthy person invests sums of money in order to get good “returns.” One thousand baht invested in a small business venture could yield or return as much as ten thousand or one hundred thousand if the



venture is properly guided. This requires education in finance, which poor and underprivileged persons lack. In the advanced country nowadays, almost everyone has this opportunity.

***Thais generally-but women specifically-desire to find a better life and, believing that the other country may offer it to them; they may consider marrying a foreigner in order to leave home.*** Thai men can leave anytime because they are principle wage earners at home. They seldom lack finance to go abroad. However, women earn less in Thai society or may be hampered by traditional ideas such as “Women should belong at home” or marriage is womens’ best security. They also know that the tourist must go home finally and promise to love him, if he can promise her happiness abroad. American men may do so, generally, if they possess good qualifications such as high education and good manners. Many have such qualities.

***Although an occasional bad character may turn up, many foreign nationals have better habits than Thais.*** Thai men are prone to carousing, alcoholism and smoking cigarettes which are detrimental to their health. Thai men are also stubborn and cling to these bad habits despite such harm. Foreign nationals may do so sometimes, but are more detached. Detachment, incidentally, is a Buddhist concept which Thais oddly cannot practice despite admitting to worship Buddha. A foreigner will stop visiting other women if it will save a good marriage. He also will encourage his friends to do so. Furthermore, Alcoholics

Anonymous and Anti-Smokers Societies started in the States by thoughtful people who desire that their friends and neighbors live happier lives.

Whatever the reasons for international marriage, many of these matches do prove secure and happy and are still very popular. A young lady who desires to be truly happy will consider that despite difference in culture and ideas, as well as her parents' or friends' influence on the matter. Every marriage can succeed, regardless of differences of any kind if the couple believes in it. ***The successful cases of intermarriage may be due to mutual acceptance and understanding; however, from the local side of the question, economic consideration and a desire to live a better life number among the many possible reasons for intermarriage.***

VOCABULARY **REVIEW & SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION**

---

**International Marriage in Thai Society**

---

**affluent:** (adj.) ~ comfortably wealthy; **well-off** (สมบูรณ์, มั่งคั่ง)

Ex.-->

1. I desire to be **affluent**, not “**loaded**” with money.”
2. **Affluence** implies having enough money to make ends meet comfortably and the remainder to save or spend confidently.

**alcoholic** : (adj.) ~ drunk; intoxicated **by** liquor (ติดเหล้า)

**alcoholism** : **drunkenness**; **intoxication** (โรคพิษสุราเรื้อรัง)

Ex.-->

1. Buddha warned against **alcoholism**.
2. Despite this warning, many Asian men become **alcoholic**.
3. **Alcoholics** Anonymous helps hundreds of Americans to stop drinking.

**anonymous:** (adj.) ~ **no name**; **nameless** (นิรนาม)

**anonymity** : (n)

Ex.-->

1. He wrote an **anonymous**, angry letter to his ex-boss.
2. Bombers often **use anonymous** phone calls to warn police.

**Anti-smoker : (Antismoking)** people who disapprove of smoking  
(ผู้ต่อต้านการสูบบุหรี่)

Ex.-->

1. **Antismoking** Societies help people quit smoking the same way that Alcoholics Anonymous helps to quit drinking.
2. Each year, hundreds of sick smokers join **Antismoking** Societies in order to breathe.

**carouse** : (v) - drink and be merry with others (ดื่มสรวลเสเฮฮา เสเพล)

Ex.-->

1. Barring one bad habit, a man will exercise another -  
e.g. He will **carouse** instead of drinking.
2. After a strong drink, usually cheap gin, some men **carouse** and bring home disease.

**despite** : (prep) - in spite of (ทั้ง ๆ ที่)

Ex.-->

1. Despite differences of opinion, people can live together.
2. Despite what others say, I think he's a very nice chap.

**detach** : (v) - to loosen hold; to release; let go of (ปล่อยวาง)

**detachment** : (n)

Ex.-->

1. "**Detachment**" means realising the emptiness of things.

2. To save oneself from grief from loss, **detach** yourself from that you hold dear to your heart.

**detriment** : (n) – danger; harm (อันตราย)

**detrimental** : (adj.) – harmful (เป็นอันตราย)

**Ex:-->**

1. Exercise drinking and smoking are both **detrimental** to health.
2. Noise is **detrimental** to emotional stability.

**hamper** : (v) – to obstruct; to interfere (กีดขวาง, มีอิทธิพล)

**Ex.-->**

1. If the handicapped view their handicap as an obstacle they are truly **hampered** by it.
2. Traditional concepts could **hamper** personal development by obstructing a truer view of life.

**ignore** : (v) – to pay no attention to (ขาดการเอาใจใส่)

**ignorance** : (n) – lack of knowledge (อวิชชา)

**ignorant** : (adj.) – knowing nothing (ไม่ประสา, ทึบ, โง่)

**Ex.-->**

1. There is no excuse for **ignorance**.
2. Being **ignorant** of local laws, Terry ran into trouble with local police.

**intermarriage : (n) - marrying between culture, race and / or religion**

(การสมรสต่างเชื้อชาติ, ศาสนา)

**Ex.-->**

1. *Intermarriage* in the West started with Henry III of England.
2. *Intermarriage* is a last resort for poor, underprivileged Asians.
3. Only solid understanding and patience can make cultural *intermarriage* succeed.

**mutual : (adj.) - between two persons shared equally** (ซึ่งกันและกัน, แบ่งปัน

เท่า ๆ กัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. *Mutual* understanding is necessary in marriage.
2. Whatever he felt for his boss, that feeling was always *mutual*.
3. A valid agreement should result in *mutual* benefit.

**prone (to) : (adj.) - apt. to; have a habit of** (ส่อแวว)

**Ex.-->**

1. He is *prone to* have accidents.
2. Maneerat claimed to be *prone to* broken-hearted.
3. Thai men are *prone to* alcoholism.

**simultaneous : (adj.) - do the same time** (ในเวลาเดียวกัน)

**simultaneously: (adv.)**

**Ex.-->**

1. There is a law of physics that “the being in same place simultaneously, of two objects, is impossible. ”
2. Nevertheless, Esthers two suitors arrived at her doorstep **simultaneously**.

**turn up** : (idiom) arrive suddenly; occur (โผล่, ปรากฏตัว)

**Ex.-->**

1. While flirting with Naree, Thaweesaks’ rival **turned up**.
2. They **turned up** at Tunis, pulped and bewildered.
3. We never know what will **turn up** from day to day.

**underprivileged persons** : persons of *poor* and educated background or  
*persons who have fewer rights than the*  
 majority (ผู้ด้อยโอกาส)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **underprivileged class** is mixed poor, from both urban and rural background.
2. There are as many urban underprivileged persons as there are rural **underprivileged persons**.

**ASSIGNMENT 7**

*Directions:* Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. “*Normal Universities vs Open Universities*”

**It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.**

**Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.**



|  |
|--|
| <b><i>Normal Universities vs Open Universities</i></b> |
|--|

Chance of being admitted to be a student in the normal university is very limited and highly selected. Normal universities possess advantages over the open universities which are important to both the student and the environment. **They promote successful *graduation*, convenience *in the environment and reduced financial burden to name a few.***

***Normal universities promote successful graduation due to required attendance.*** The student must attend every day, thus ensuring that he or she passes the course. The most direct way to pass an examination is to attend classes and lectures frequently and take efficient notes. This can only happen by regular attendance. Contrarily, open universities require that either teachers or students attend on certain days and the rest of the time is free. Many students do not regularly attend their classes. Furthermore, the student attending an open university feels no obligation to attend especially since a “sheet” or other supplement may be available. In addition, enrollment is often higher in an open university and many classes have approximately to 2,000 students. Instructors may feel uncomfortable with so many students, and play lament for personal interests.

**Since students must attend regularly, the *environment is less congested*.** Students attend courses regularly and, therefore, they do not roam around outside the campus and spend money or add to the congestion. There are fewer persons on the pavement, fewer vehicles and less noise. Contrarily, open universities permit students to enter society at large and the environment outside is more cluttered. There are more vehicles and more noise, and moving is more restricted.

***Finally, the requirement to graduate at normal term length (four years) has several advantages as well.*** To begin, the student must graduate in four years, compelling him or her to attend regularly and take notes for the exams. Since the graduation must succeed in four years, the student or a sponsor needs only to pay the tuition up to the last year and extended debt burden is eliminated. Students of open universities may need to continue for two or more years, and their burden follows them until graduation.

***Poor Thai students may enter open universities more easily than normal universities but they face hazards in graduating, including continued debt.*** Normal university students feel obligated to graduate in a four years, to guarantee an opportunity to work. Their pressure, itself, induces them to graduate. But open university students attend when or if

they can. They often extend their terms to as long as eight years. When they extend, they must pay tuition fee for new semesters and new materials. Most poor students either study part-time or they get money from their parents. The extended term can increase their debt in this way.



## VOCABULARY *REVIEW* & SENTENCE *CONSTRUCTION*

*Normal Universities vs Open Universities*

**admit.** - (v) - to allow to enter; to accept (รับเข้า, ยอมรับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The university **admits** over 1,000 students each year.
2. The United States **admitted** no more slaves after 1884.
3. The opposing team **admitted** defeat and disbanded.

**approximate** : (adj.) - estimate (ประมาณ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **approximate** cost of airfare to Bangkok is US\$3,000.
2. The **approximate** extent of damage was several ten thousand baht.
3. Open universities have classes of **approximately 2,000** students each.

**attend** : (v) - to be part of; go to (เข้าร่วม, เข้าศึกษา)

**attendance** : (n)

**Ex.-->**

1. Every year on March **20**, they **attend** Rotary Club functions.
2. Students who **attend** normal universities have better skills.
3. After **attending** lectures and reading in the library, a student should pass his exams.

**clutter** : (v) – use space; congest (สภาพหนาแน่น, รกรุงรัง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The environment around “open universities” is always **cluttered**.
2. My floor was so **cluttered** that I could not sit on it.
3. The room was **cluttered** with garbage.

**compel** : (v) – to drive or urge with force (บังคับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Parents often **compel** children to study language.
2. Parents **compel** school-aged children to compete for a good school.
3. He **compelled** his girl to work at a Pattaya Bar.

**congested** : (adj.) – crowded; blocked (แน่นมาก, ติดมาก)

**Ex.-->**

1. We failed to make the concert on time since traffic was **congested**.
2. My nose was so **congested** that I had to breathe with my mouth.
3. Air or water traffic is seldom so **congested**.

**eliminate** : (v) – remove; rid; dispose of; kill (ขจัด, ฆ่า)

**Ex.-->**

1. The youngsters **eliminated** the witness and his family.

2. The use of pesticide to **eliminate** insects causes serious illness in humans.
3. After he had finished his caper, Mason **eliminated** the evidence.

**enroll** : (v) – to apply as a student; become a member (สมัครเข้าเรียน, สมัครเป็นสมาชิก)

**enrollment** : (n)

**Ex.-->**

1. Over 50,000 students **enroll** at Ramkhamhaeng each year.
2. Of the ten thousand students **enrolling** at Kentucky State, two thousands are under the Department of Business Administration.
3. More than five hundred students **enroll** for Accounting each term.

**ensure** : (v) – to make sure, certain or safe (ประกัน, รับประกัน)

**Ex:-->**

1. **Ensure** that file “JOBNAME” is current.
2. Oran tiles are **ensured** for five years.
3. The good man **ensures** his family.

**extend** : (v) – to continue over a long term (ขยาย, ยืดเวลา)

**Ex-->**

1. Many students **extend** their B.A. to be up to 8 years.

2. **Extending** graduations **extends** debt.
3. Aside from parents' normal debt to pay for education, a student may **extend** the debt by failing more than one year.

**hazard** : (n) – risk, danger; threat (เสี่ยงภัย, อันตราย)

**Ex.-->**

1. Leaving garbage in a fire escape is an obvious **hazard**.
2. Drunk driving possess a **hazard** for normal motorists.
3. In America, heavy snow and ice are a **hazard** for both pedestrians and motorists.

**normal** : (adj.) – ordinary; common; regularly (ตามปกติ, ธรรมดา)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Normal** people have their own idiosyncrasies.
2. **Normal** living is void of excitement.
3. **Normal** schools admit students by examination.

**oblige** : (v) – to bind by a favor (ทำด้วยความเต็มใจ, ผูกพัน, บังคับตามกฎหมาย)

**obligation** : (n)

**Ex.-->**

1. She felt **obliged** to help in the investigation.
2. We wonder if you would **oblige**.
3. The law **obliges** parents to send their children to school.

**part-time** : (n) - after normal hours (นอกเวลา)

Ex.-->

1. Translating **part-time** often is more trouble than its worth.
2. **Part-time** students take longer to graduate.
3. In American universities full-time to **part-time** students are still 10 to 1. (10 : 1).

**pavement** : (n) - footpath; sidewalk (ทางเดิน)

Ex.-->

1. In Britain, a dog is fined heavily for "fouling the **footpath**."
2. Low class people often spit on the **pavement**.
3. Motorcycles should not be allowed on the **pavement**.

**pressure** : (n) - a painful feeling of burden (แรงกดดัน)

Ex.-->

1. Too much **pressure** at work causes people to explode.
2. Add to this the **pressures** of family life and you have potential homicide.
3. When you apply **pressure** to liquid oxygen, it explodes.

**promote** : (v) - encourage or help something to happen (ส่งเสริม)

Ex.-->

1. The Thai government **promotes** business to services.
2. Since 1984, Thailand has **promoted** tourism.



3. The salesman tried to **promote** the sale of the company's products.

**restrict** - (v) - to confine within bounds (กักเก็บ)

**restricted** : (adj.) - (ต้องห้าม)

Ex.-->

1. This is a **restricted** area.
2. Testing of dangerous weapons should be **restricted**.
3. People complained that the safety belts **restricts** movement.

**semester** : (n) - term of study (ภาคการศึกษา)

Ex.-->

1. One normal **semester** is about four months.
2. She failed EN 305 for two **semesters**.
3. This **semester**, the university introduced two new subjects.

**sponsor** : (n) - someone who supports someone (ผู้สนับสนุน)

Ex.-->

1. A **sponsor** could be vital for some projects.
2. Commercial firms often are **sponsors** of the programs.
3. The most contributive **sponsor** for a political party usually becomes the party secretary.

**supplement** : (n) - extra materials or resource (ใบแทรก, ส่วนเพิ่ม)

Ex.-->

1. A “sheet” can be used as a **supplement** for the text – not as a text itself.
2. Vitamin **supplements** are popular in the US.
3. The Nation Junior magazine is a **supplement**.

**take notes** : to record lessons and lecture briefly (ทำโน้ตย่อ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Students should **take notes** frequently.
2. Somchai **took** at the convention.
3. **Taking notes** can help a student understand the lessons.

**tuition** : (n) – cost of semester studies (ค่าเล่าเรียน)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Tuition** ranks as the highest expense a student pays.
2. **Tuition** of some universities includes the cap and gown.
3. Although **tuition** is cheaper, Ramkhamhaeng University cannot guarantee all those who enter will pass this exams.

**universities** : (n) – institutes of higher learning (มหาวิทยาลัย, สถาบัน  
อุดมศึกษา)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Universities** are for students committed to learning.
2. There are only a few normal **universities** in Bangkok.
3. In the foreign country, there are only normal **universities**.

**ASSIGNMENT 8**

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. *“Over-Discipline Is Harmful for Children”*

***It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.***

***Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***

# The Jotted Outline

## *Over-Discipline Is Harmful for Children*

### **I. Thesis**

*Over-Discipline impairs a child's growth, produces angry insecure individuals, and perpetuates a cycle of child abuse.*

### **II. Impairs a Child's Growth**

- people need love and understanding
- early years importance
- anger useless unless for benefit of child
- children need patience and compassion
- over-discipline blocks child's development or trust and self-confidence
- becomes a person "with a chip on his shoulder"
- must know love to give it

### **III. Produces angry insecure individuals**

- severe discipline produces angry defensive individuals
- many fears and complex result
- many develop aggressive natures to overcompensate
- resentment and a desire for revenge result
- many criminals had hurt upbringing (become rebels)

- cannot conform; hate authority
- time lost in working out psychological problems

#### ***IV. Perpetuates a cycle of child abuse***

- viscous circle of abused child becoming parent who abuses
- familiarity with violence
- no experience with kindness and tenderness
- repeat what we learn
- hard to break patterns
- one must be strong to break patterns

#### ***V. Conclusion***

This essay supports “*sparing the rod and spoiling the child*”. ***Over discipline impairs a child’s growth, produces angry insecure individuals, and perpetuates a cycle of child abuse.***

### ***Over-Discipline Is Harmful for Children***

*"Spare the rod and spoil the child"* is a saying that expresses the view of a non-disciplinarian. *"Children should be seen and not heard"* is a saying that expresses the opposite point of view. Many parents still believe today that discipline is good and necessary for a child. They believe that, like a dog or a monkey, a child must be reared and trained. But there is a basic fallacy in this statement. A child is not an animal. Of course some discipline is necessary in order to prepare a child to live in a world with many others. But strong discipline, especially physical punishment, is very harmful for a growing being. ***Over-discipline impairs a child's growth, produces angry insecure individuals, and perpetuates a cycle of child abuse.***

All human beings need love and understanding. A child needs even more. A person's early years, or years of formation, are extremely important. Children grow best in an atmosphere of love and understanding. Anger doesn't do much good for either the child or the parent. Of course, there is a place for anger when it is for the good of the child, for example, a parent can express anger when teaching his child not to walk in front of cars. But this is for the child's own good and it is different from harshness and punishment which is not for the benefit of the child. All of us want others to treat us gently and kindly.

Children feel the same, and need much patience and compassion from parents. A person's personality is formed by the age of three, according to psychologists. ***Over-discipline can block a child's development, of trust and self-confidence and often his creative abilities.*** He may become a person "with a chip on his shoulder." This describes an individual who, after many years of chastisement, comes to expect it from everyone. He learns to fear from an early age. Growing up in a state of fear and expectation of abuse is very unhealthy. People must grow up in an atmosphere of love and warmth in order to know and recognize it. If we don't know love, then how can we give it?

Many people nowadays are still raised in a stern authoritarian environment. They grow up to be adults who experienced severe disciplinary measures as children. ***Unfortunately, this kind of upbringing tends to produce angry, defensive individuals.*** As well, these individuals are often burdened with many fears and complexes as a result of their early experiences. Many overcompensate for their deep feelings of inferiority and insecurity by developing hard outer shells and aggressive personalities. But one very sad outcome of a harsh upbringing is the feeling of resentment that results and a desire for revenge. Most hardened criminals come from backgrounds where there was much exposure to brutality. These people often grow up to become angry rebels. They resent discipline and symbols of authority and become socially handicapped. They have much trouble fitting into society and conforming. Of course, not everyone from a harsh

background is destined to be a criminal. But they may lose much time in their lives, later, working out the psychological problems caused by their upbringing. There is so much brutality in the world. Surely that is reason enough that love and tenderness be experienced in the home.

***The most dangerous aspect of over-discipline is the viscous circle that results.*** A child treated badly grows up to become a parent who does the same with his own children. Someone who grows up in a violent atmosphere becomes familiar with violence. We learn by example, and if love and understanding are not experienced in early life, then these feelings are only conceptual ideas. Someone who has never known kindness or tenderness in his early life, cannot express it later. This explains the pattern of the victim becoming the victimizer. We repeat what we learn, even though we are consciously unaware of doing so. It takes much self-discipline and mental therapy to “*unlearn*” a life of hard discipline. Those who want to must be able to step back and see their behavior and the patterns that are repeated. But only exceptional and determined individuals can break these patterns, as it takes much mental strength to overcome early conditioning.



Perhaps this essay appears to be an argument in support of “*sparing the rod and spoiling the child.*” If it does, then my point has been adequately and successfully communicated. Strong discipline or over-discipline is far from beneficial. ***Over-discipline impairs a child’s growth, produces angry insecure individuals and perpetuates a cycle of child abuse.***

## VOCABULARY REVIEW & SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

### Over-Discipline Is Harmful for Children

**ability:** (n) – skill; knowledge; power to do something (ความสามารถ, ความ  
รู้, ความเก่งกาจ)

Ex..-->

1. I don't doubt your **ability** to solve the problem.
2. He has the **ability** to carry heavy loads.

**abuse :** (n, v) – cruel treatment, treat unkindly (การทำทารุณ)

Ex..-->

1. The men's **abuse** of the horse made people angry.
2. Do not **abuse** your dog, and he will be your friend.

**according :** (adv.) – according to (prep.), on the authority of; following  
what is said by; in agreement with; in a way that is  
in proportion to (ตามนั้น, ฉะนั้น, ตาม)

Ex..-->

1. **According** to the bible, God made the world in six days.
2. He will be punished **according** to the seriousness of his crime.
3. Many people grow up perpetuating misconceptions, **according** to how they were taught as children.

**adequate** : (adj.) - as much as required; enough; sufficient (พอเพียง, สามารถที่จะทำ)

**Ex.-->**

1. They had an **adequate** amount of money for the trip.
2. His grades were **adequate**, but not enough for him to make the honor roll.

**aggressive** : (adj.) - quarrelsome; disposed to attack (รุกราน, ก้าวร้าว)

**Ex.-->**

1. A man who goes from door to door selling things has to be **aggressive** if he wants to succeed.
2. We need an **aggressive** leader.

**anger** : (n) - strong, unfriendly feeling usually caused by thoughts that one has been wronged (โกรธ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The King's unjust laws caused great **anger**.
2. When I saw the boys throwing stones at the dog, I was filled with **anger**.

**appear** : (v) - come into sight (เห็นได้ชัด)  
 - seem (ดูเหมือน)  
 - look as if (ปรากฏ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **appears** to be happy.

2. The ship **appeared** far away.

**argument** : (n) - a dispute; a discussion of a thing disagreed upon  
(การโต้เถียงด้วยเหตุผลสนับสนุน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The children had an **argument** about whose turn it was to wash the dishes. Mary said it was Ruth's turn.
2. They spent hours in **argument** about where to go.

**aspect** : (n) - a way in which a thing may be viewed or considered  
(รูปการ, หน้าที่, ปัญหา)

**Ex.-->**

1. All **aspects** of the question must be examined.
2. The fierce **aspect** of the robbers frightened the children.

**atmosphere**: (v) - the general feeling of a place (บรรยากาศ)

**Ex.-->**

1. There is an **atmosphere** of peace and calm in the country quite different from the **atmosphere** of a big city.
2. The old house had an **atmosphere** of neglect.

**authority** : (n) - the right to control, command, or order (อำนาจบังคับ,  
ผู้มีอำนาจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. By what **authority** do you order me to do this?

2. The country council has the **authority** to close all the schools in case of bad weather.

**aware** : (adj.) conscious; informed; understanding (ทราบ, เข้าใจถึง)

**Ex.-->**

1. He drove carefully, **aware** of the danger of the icy road.
2. John was so interested in his reading that he was not **aware** of the time. (He did not realize what time it was.)

**background** : (n) - the parts of a scene or picture that are or seem to be behind something else (ภูมิหลัง)

**Ex.-->**

1. In order to understand the war, they are studying its **background**.
2. He does not have the **background** for the job.

**basic** : (adj.) - of or forming a base; main (หลักพื้นฐาน)

**Ex.-->**

1. You must obey the **basic** rules.
2. **Basic** principles are very important for the beginner.
3. Love and patient concern are **basic** and essential aspects of good, healthy life.

**becoming** : (adj.) - suitable (เหมาะ)  
- attractive (น่าดู, جذاب)

**Ex.-->**

1. That color is becoming to you.
2. Mary wears a very *becoming* hat. It is suitable for her.

**behavior : (n) - act or manner of behaving oneself; conduct** (ความประพฤติ, คุณสมบัติ)

**Ex.-->**

1. His unkind **behavior** offended other people.
2. Mary's **behavior** is excellent; she is so polite.

**benefits : (n) - help; act of kindness** (เป็นผลดี, เป็นประโยชน์)

**Ex.-->**

1. The students had the *benefit* of a fine library.
2. The camp has the *benefit* of a lake near by.

**block : (v) - make movement difficult or impossible** (แออัด, กีดขวาง)

**Ex.-->**

1. All the roads were *blocked* by the heavy snowfall.
2. A tree fell across the road and *blocked* the traffic.

**break : (v) - disobey, not keep (rules)** (ฝ่าฝืน, ละเลย)

**Ex.-->**

1. The children do not mean to **break** the rules of the school.
2. Those who *break* the law will be punished.

**brutality** : (n) - savageness; cruelty (ความโหดร้าย, ความทารุณ)

Ex.-->

Must hardened criminals come from backgrounds where there was much exposure to **brutality**.

**burden** : (n) - difficulty, worry, or responsibility a person must endure (ภาระหน้าที่)

Ex.-->

1. Supporting his family was a great **burden** for him.
2. It is the duty of humanity to share **burdens**, not be added to them.

**circle** : (n) - a closed curve that has all of its points at an equal distance from its center (วงกลม, รอบ, โดยรอบ)

Ex.-->

1. Every point on a **circle** is the same distance away from the centre as any other point.
2. She has a wide **circle** of friends.
3. The best way to end a “viscous circle” is to realize one is causing it and stop. This is very difficult to do.

**communicate** : (v) - make *known*; give information (ติดต่อ, บอก, แจ้ง)

Ex.-->

1. Radio, television, and newspapers quickly **communicate news** to all parts of the world.
2. How is this disease **communicate**?

**compassion : (n) - sorrow for the suffering of others; pity; sympathy**  
(ความกรุณา, สงสาร, เมตตา)

**Ex.-->**

1. Her heart was filled with **compassion** for the motherless children.
2. Buddha most memorable trait was his **compassion** toward living things.

**complex : (adj., n) - not simple; made up of parts; difficult to understand; a whole made up of parts** (ซับซ้อน, ประกอบขึ้นด้วยส่วนต่าง ๆ หลายส่วน)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **complex** system of government must be reorganized.
2. The engine of an airplane is very **complex**.
3. Some people tend to make the simple very **complex**, rather than making the complex very simple.

**concept : (n) - a notion; an idea** (สิ่งที่คิดขึ้น, ความคิด)

**Ex.-->**

1. The judge had a clear **concept** of justice.
2. My cousin is always late for everything because he has no **concept** of what time it is.
3. Beauty is a relative concept to a given individual. No two people have the same ideas of it.



**confidence** : (n) complete trust (ความไว้วางใจ, ความมั่นใจ)

- faith to oneself or others

Ex.-->

1. She has **confidence** in her daughter.

2. She has **confidence** in herself.

**conform** : (v) to act or think in a way that agrees with a rule or a standard (ทำตาม, คล้อยตาม)

Ex.-->

1. New students were told that they must **conform** to the rules of the school.

2. A citizen is expected to **conform** to the laws of his country.

**conscious** : (adj.) - having power to *know* that *one can* think and feel (มีสติ)

- awake (รู้สึกตัว)

- mentally *active* (สำนึก)

Ex.-->

1. Man is a **conscious** animal.

2. The injured man was still **conscious**.

3. An intelligent person is always **conscious** of his mistakes.

**creative** : (adj.) - having or *showing* ability to make something new (ในเชิงประดิษฐ์, เจ้าความคิด, สร้างสรรค์)

**Ex.-->**

1. A poet must be *creative*.
2. Writing composition needs *creative* thinking.

**criminal** : (n) - a person who has committed a crime (อาชญากร, จำเลย,  
ผู้ร้าย)

**Ex.-->**

1. The *criminal* was sent to jail.
2. The *criminal* was sent to prison for stealing.
3. According to the Old Testament, Abel was the first *criminal*,  
he killed his brother.

**cycle** : (n) - a period of time during which a series of events or actions  
takes place in a certain order and which constantly repeats  
itself (วัฏจักร)

**Ex.-->**

1. The cycle of the seasons is the same every years.
2. Spring, summer, autumn, and winter are the cycle of the four  
seasons of the year.
3. Birth and death make up the “viscous cycle” of incarnations.  
(reincarnation)

**defensive** : (adj.) - **used for**, intended **for**; defending; protective  
(เพื่อป้องกันตัว, เป็นเชิงป้องกันตัว)

**Ex.-->**

1. Whether a big gun is an offensive or a **defensive** weapon is a difficult question; it depends on whether you're behind it or in front of it.
2. **Defensive** warfare means protecting against attack.

**describe** : (v) - give an account of; give a picture in words (พรรณนา, ลักษณะ, รูปพรรณ)

Ex.-->

1. Can you **describe** it to me?
2. He **describes** himself as a doctor.

**desire** : (n) ~ a want; **the** thing wanted (ความต้องการ)

Ex.-->

1. His greatest **desire** is to sleep.
2. He expressed a strong **desire** to go.
3. **Desire** to benefit others is called charity, whereas helping only oneself is called selfish.

**destined** : (v) - **be fated for** (กำหนดโชคชะตา, พรหมลิขิต, วางจุดหมาย)

Ex.-->

1. He was **destined** to become a great president.
2. They were **destined** never to meet again.

**determine** : (v) - **decide** (ตัดสินใจ)

Ex.-->

1. The judge will **determine** who is telling the truth.
2. The news that he was in trouble **determined** me to act at once.
3. Our future lives are **determined** by causes in our present lives.

**development** : (n) – growth, now happening or result (เจริญ, พัฒนา)

Ex.-->

1. Baby's **development** in the past few months has been fast. She has learned to talk and walk.
2. The doctor told us to call him if there were any **developments** after taking the medicine.

**discipline** : (n,v) – strict training of mind and body to obey rules and control one's behavior, force to obey (วินัย, สอนวินัย)

Ex.-->

1. Military schools are known for their **discipline**.
2. The teacher **disciplined** the boys for throwing chalk at each other.

**especially** : (adv.) – unusually; particularly (เป็นพิเศษ, โดยเฉพาะ)

Ex.-->

1. He is an **especially** good student in history.
2. I **especially** like walnuts.

**essay** : (n) – short place of writing on single subject which gives the writer's personal ideas (เรียงความร้อยแก้ว)

**Ex.-->**

1. The students wrote **essays** about the importance of education.
2. Your interesting **essays** "New York Is My Second Home" should be published to public.

**even** : (adv.) – yet, still (มีโอกาสเท่ากัน, ในระดับเดียวกัน, สม่่าเสมอ)

**Ex.-->**

Mary spells well but Bob spells better than Mary, and John spells **even** better than Bob.

**exceptional** : (adj.) – unusual; out of ordinary; remarkable (ผิดธรรมดา, เป็นพิเศษ)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Exceptional** weather in the big city is hardly found.
2. In the novel, the author created an image of a woman of **exceptional** physical and personal beauty.

**expect** : (v) – look forward to; look for confidently; anticipate (คาดหมาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **expects** her to come on Friday.
2. The teacher **expected** an apology from the rude child.

**expectation** : (n) – the act of expecting (คาดว่าจะมี, คอยอย่างใจจดใจจ่อ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The man anchored his boat securely in **expectation** of the coming storm.
2. Getting a watch for Christmas was Mary's one **expectation**.

**experienced** : (adj.) – *having experience; having knowledge or skill as the result of experience* (ความรู้ความชำนาญ, ความชำนาญ)

**Ex.-->**

1. An **experienced** nurse is mostly needed.
2. An **experienced** lover is well aware to disagreement.
3. Being **experienced** means a person has earlier done or felt something and understands it well.

**exposure** : (n) – *exposing or being exposed (all senses)* (เปิด, ตาก, ฝน, ออกจากที่กำบัง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The climbers lost their way on the mountain and died of **exposure**.
2. **Exposure** of the body to strong sunlight may be harmful.

**express** : (v) – *say clearly, state* (แสดงความรู้สึก, แสดงความหมาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **expressed** his ideas very well.
2. He **expressed** his anger by shouting.

**extremely** : (adv.) - very; at or *to* the extreme (อย่างยิ่ง, สุดซึ่ง)

Ex.-->

1. It is **extremely** warm today.
2. He was **extremely** happy when he won the contest.

**fallacy** : (n) - a *false or* mistaken idea, opinion *or belief*; *false* reasoning *or* argument (การอ้างเหตุผลโดยยึดหลัก, เข้าใจผิด)

Ex.-->

1. A statement based on **fallacy**.
2. The **fallacy** that money brings happiness.
3. It is **a fallacy** to think one can escape punishment either now or in his next life.

**familiar** : (adj.) - *in* ~~an~~ *hard* or seen; knowing something well (คุ้นเคย, ชินหู, รู้จัก)

Ex.-->

1. I can't remember the name of the song, but the tune is **familiar**.
2. I am **familiar** with that story.
3. It took me over a year to make me **familiar** with American custom.

**fear** : (v) - *be* afraid; *feel anxious* (หวาดกลัว, เกรง)

(n) - a strong *feeling* caused by knowing that danger, pain, or evil (ความเกรงกลัว, ความเกรงขาม)

**Ex.-->**

1. My brother *fears* the dark.
2. She *feared* that we would be late for the show if we didn't hurry.
3. The man felt great *fear* when he saw the escaped lion.
4. *Fear* for the future kept her awake.
5. *Fear* for the safety of her children often causes a mother to overprotect them.

**formation** : (n) - forming or shaping; the process of forming or making  
(การสร้าง, ชนวน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Clouds are *formation* of condensed water vapor.
2. The *formation* of ice from water requires a temperature of less than thirty-two degrees.

**gently** : (adv.) - in a gentle (kindly) way (สุภาพ, อ่อนโยน)

**Ex.-->**

1. He petted the kitten *gently*.
2. The boys handled the kitten gently.
3. It is a feminine virtue to handle people and objects gently.

**growth** : (n) - the process of growing (to become bigger); increase  
(ความงอกงาม, มีมากขึ้น)

**Ex.-->**



1. He planted some seeds in his back yard and then watched their **growth**.
2. At what age does an elephant reach full **growth**?

**handicap**: (n) – anything that hinders one; anything likely to lessen one chance of success (ทำให้เสียเปรียบ, เป็นอุปสรรค)

**Ex.-->**

1. Poor eyesight is a **handicap** to a student.
2. A sore thumb is a **handicap** to a person when he tries to write.
3. A young man or girl may feel **handicapped** when he or she is spurned by others.

**hard** : (adj.) – difficult; severe; stern (หนัก)

**Ex.-->**

1. This is a **hard** problem to solve.
2. He has a **hard** face.

**harden** : (v) – make or become hard, strong, hardy (ใจดำ, ปราศจากความปราณี, เกียวกวด)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **hardened** criminal, one who is callous.
2. Most **hardened** criminals come from backgrounds where there was much exposure to brutality.

**harmful : (adj.) - causing harm; damaging** (บาดเจ็บ, ทำอันตราย)

Ex.-->

1. A poor diet is **harmful** to your health.
2. Some snakes are **harmful**.

**harsh : (adj.) - rough; unpleasant; cruel; severe; stern** (ความรุนแรง, หยาบ, เกรี้ยวกราด)

Ex.-->

1. Her parents were very **harsh**.
2. The officer was **harsh** with his men; so, he treat him without mercy.

**human : (adj.) - of or like people or mankind** (มนุษย์, เป็นลักษณะของมนุษย์)  
**: (n) - mankind** (ความเป็นมนุษย์)

Ex.-->

1. All men, women and children are **human** beings.
2. Talking is a **human** ability.
3. **Humans** are different from non-human beings because they create their environment.

**impair : (v) - weaken; damage** (ทำให้เสีย)

Ex.-->

1. Over-discipline **impairs** a child's growth.
2. The heavy fog **impaired** the driver's vision.

**individual** : (n) - *one person; one thing; for one only; personal* (โดยลำตัว, โดยเฉพาะ)

Ex.-->

1. Mary is a happy **individual**.
2. A bicycle is an **individual** mean of traveling; because it is, for one person only.
3. **Individual** concerns are both fewer and less important than public concerns.

**inferior** : (adj.) - *lower in rank, importance; poor or poorer in quality when compared to someone or something else* (ต่ำกว่า, ผู้ต่ำกว่า)

Ex.-->

1. The rank of captain is **inferior** to the rank of major.
2. A child growing up under great competitiveness and pride will later feel **inferior** to others.

**inferiority** : (n) - *one lower in rank or importance* (ปมด้อย)

Ex.-->

A good superior uses the practical experience of his **inferiority**.

**insecure** : (adj.) - *not safe; not providing good support; feeling unsafe; without protection; lacking confidence* (ไม่มั่นคง)

Ex.--> Foreign investors feel Thai economic situation is now **insecure**.

**insecurity** : (n) - suffering caused **by feelings of** temporariness **or** inadequacy (ไม่มั่นคง)

**kindly** : (adv.) - friendly; sympathetic; in a kind or pleasant (อย่างอ่อนโยน, อย่างนุ่มนวล)

**Ex.-->**

1. The girl spoke **kindly** to the lost little boy.
2. She spoke **kindly** to the old man.
3. If we act **kindly** to others, they will be grateful to us later.

**kindness** : (n) - **nature; being kind; perform a kind act** (ความกรุณา)

**Ex.-->**

1. He has shown me many **kindnesses**.
2. Someone who has never known **kindness** or tenderness in his early life, cannot express it later.

**lose** : (v) - **spend time, opportunity; waste**

- **to discord or misplace; unable to find** (สูญเสีย, ทำให้หมด, เสียหาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. I shall **lose** no time in doing it, shall do it at once.
2. We will **lose** no time in getting to school.
3. Many readers not only **lose** themselves in a good book, but they also later relate to the characters and the action.

**mental** : (adj.) - *of the mind; having to do with thinking* (ในใจ, ทางใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He had great **mental** ability.
2. Learning to speak is one stage of a child's **mental** development.
3. Many supposedly physical problems result from **mental** problems.

**necessary** : (adj.) - *needed; required* (จำเป็น)

**Ex.-->**

1. Sleep is **necessary** for good health.
2. Food is **necessary** to life.
3. Love and kindness are **necessary** to the well-balanced individual.

**nowadays** : (adv. of time) - *at the present time* (ปัจจุบัน, ทุกวันนี้)

**Ex.-->**

1. Most people travel by airplane **nowadays**, if they are going a long distance.
2. **Nowadays** children prefer TV to reading.
3. "Nowadays, a good man is very hard to find," her mother began.

**opposite** : (adj.) - *different; against; something that is as different as possible from* (ตรงข้าม, คนละส่วน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Black and white are **opposite**.
2. Up is **opposite** to down.
3. Although good and evil **are opposite** extremes, they also depend upon each other to exist.

**overcome** : (v) - *to get the better of; beat or conquer; to get over or deal with* (ได้ชัยชนะ, ให้ผ่านพ้น)

**Ex.-->**

1. He tried to **overcome** the others in the race.
2. He finally **overcome** his fear of flying by learning all he could about airplanes.
3. Evil tries to **overcome** Good, but instead is overcome by it.

**own** : (n) - *something that belongs to one* (แต่ผู้เดียว, คนเดียว)

**Ex.-->**

1. The accident was her own fault.
2. Even my **own** brother wouldn't help me.

**parent** : (n) - *a father or mother* (ครอบครัวที่มีพ่อแม่)

**Ex.-->**

1. Children are dependent upon their **parents** for food.
2. May I introduce **you** to my **parents**?
3. Perseverance to **parent** to success or victory.

**patience** : (n) being **able** to **put** up with hardship, pain, trouble or delay without getting angry or upset (มีความอดทน, อดสาเห)

*Ex.-->*

1. The crowd showed great **patience** as they waited in the rain to buy tickets to the movie.
2. She endured the long delay with **patience**.

**pattern** : (n) a model or plan to be copied in making something; a design used to decorate; a set of actions or qualities that is repeated or that does no change (แบบ, ตัวอย่าง, โครง)

*Ex.-->*

1. She bought a **pattern** for an evening dress.
2. The scientist studied the **pattern** of the monkey's behavior.

**perpetuate** : (v) - cause to continue or be remembered (เสมอ, ตลอด, ชั่วกาลปวสาน)

*Ex.-->*

1. They erected a statue to **perpetuate** his memory.
2. **Perpetuate** the memory of a great statement by erecting a statue of him.

**personality** : (n) - all of a person's characteristics; habits; behavior; and other qualities (บุคลิกภาพ, บุคลิกลักษณะ)

*Ex.-->*

1. A person's **personality** makes him or her different from everybody else.
2. Ron is very easy to get along with because he has such a friendly **personality**.

**physical** : (adj.) - *having to do with the body; having to do with matter and energy; having to do with thing that was seen in nature* (ในทางกาย, โดยธรรมชาติ)

Ex.-->

1. But strong discipline, especially **physical** punishment, is very harmful for a growing being.
2. Physics is a **physical** science.
3. Physical needs should not overshadow emotional and **psychological** ones.

**prepare** : (v) - *to make or get ready* (ตระเตรียม, เตรียมการ)

Ex.-->

- 1 Bill **prepared** himself for the game by practicing.
2. We will **prepare** lunch.
3. By **preparing** in advance, a student will be able to pass his exam.

**produce** : (v) - *to bring forth; show; make; cause* (ผลผลิต, สิ่งที่ได้)

Ex.-->

1. She **produced** a letter to prove her statement.



2. Boiling water **produces** steam.

**psychology** : (n) – the science concerned with the study of the mind and its processes; the mental and emotional processes which determine how an individual or group behaves (จิตใจ, นิสัย, จิตศาสตร์, ความคิด)

**Ex.-->**

1. Child **psychology** is a required course in teacher training.
2. Good salesmen understand the **psychology** of customers.

**punishment** : (n) – the act of punishing (to make a person suffer for a wrong he has done); the penalty for a crime or wrong (โทษ, บทลงโทษ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **punishment** of criminals is left to the courts.
2. His **punishment** for robbery was five years in prison.
3. Harsh or vindictive (vengeful) **punishment** induces anger and resentment.

**raise** : (v) – cause to grow; increase in amount (เพิ่ม, ยกกระต๊ับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. They are **raising** corn in that field.
2. Joan **raised** her voice as she became more angry.

**rear** : (v) - *be take care of and help to grow up; raise; aid in growing*  
(เลี้ยงดู)

**Ex.-->**

1. When their parents died, an aunt **reared** the two boys.
2. My grandparents **reared** my father and his brother and sisters.

**rebel** : (n) - *a person who fights against or will not obey authority*  
(ก่อการจลาจล, ขัดขืน, หัวรั้น)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **rebels** attacked the king's palace in an attempt to take control of the government.
2. The **rebels** fought because they thought the government was bad.

**recognize** : (v) - *to show that you have seen or heard about a person or thing before* (จำได้, รู้จัก, สำนึก, แสดงอาการรู้จัก)

**Ex.-->**

1. I hardly **recognized** that boy because he had grown so much taller since I last saw him.
2. I **recognized** him as the same man I had seen yesterday.

**repeat** : (v) - *to say, do or make again* (กล่าวซ้ำ, เขียนซ้ำ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The teacher **repeated** the question to the class.

2. When he copied the letter over, he **repeated** the mistake he had made the first time.

**resentment** : (n) -- a feeling of anger or bitterness (ไม่พอใจ, ชื่นเคือง)

**Ex.-->**

1. He felt **resentment** at being called a coward.
2. Walk away in **resentment**.

**result** : (n) - something that happens or is caused by something else  
(เป็นผล, ก่อผล)

**Ex.-->**

1. The bicycle accident was a **result** of carelessness.
2. He won the race as a **result** of his greater speed.

**revenge** : (n) - injury, harm, or punishment done; to **pay** back a wrong  
(ความพยาบาท, การแก้แค้น)

**Ex.-->**

1. The man swore to get **revenge** on those who had attacked him.
2. They burned their neighbor's house in **revenge**.

**secure** : (adj.) - **safe** from harm or loss; **safe** from danger (ปลอดภัย, มั่นคง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The jewels were **secure** in a safe.
2. The basement was a **secure** place to be during the wind storm.

3. Many people willingly believe that a good marriage, properly and money will offer them a **secure** and happy existence.

**security** : (n) - a feeling of safety; *freedom* from danger or harm;  
protection (ปลอดภัย, สวัสดิการ)

**Ex.-->**

1. They put a new lock on the door as **security**.
2. Money in the bank gave mother a feeling of **security**.
3. Family, wealth and possessions actually are **less security** than we imagine.

**severe** : (adj.) - very strict; *harsh*; dangerous; serious; violent or *sharp*  
(เข้มงวด, รุนแรง, อันตราย)

**Ex.-->**

1. That country has **severe** laws.
2. The **severe** storm blew down many trees.
3. Malaysia imposes **severe** punishment for drug trafficking.

**socially** : (adv.) (การอยู่ร่วมกัน)

**society** : (n) - *human beings as a group; all people ; a particular group of people; a club or other group of people who join together of an interest they all share* (สังคม, หมู่ชน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Having enough food to go around will be one of **society's** biggest problem in years to come.

2. In his early years, this country had an agricultural **society**.

**state** : (n) - the condition of a person or thing (ถ้อยคำ, คำแถลง)

**Ex.-->**

1. She was very upset after the accident was in no **state** to see anyone.
2. He was in an angry **state**.
3. Some mental **states** we achieve in meditation are actually illusions.

**statement** : (n) - something stated (the condition of a people or thing)  
(การแถลง, แจ้ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The police took the witness' **statement** of what had happened during the robbery.
2. Every month my parents get a **statement** from the bank telling how much money they have in their checking account.

**step** : (v) - to move by taking a step or steps (เดิน, การกระทำ, เดินหลีกเลี่ยงไปข้างหนึ่ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The driver asked everyone to **step** to the rear of the bus.
2. She **stepped** aside.

**stern** : (adj.) - harsh or strict (น่าเกรงขาม, กวดขัน, เกียวกวด)

**Ex.-->**

1. The judge's face was *stern as* he spoke.
2. Mother was *stern* when she realized that we had lied to her.
3. Good parents are *stern* to discipline children, but never cruel or unloving.

**strength : (n) - the quality of being strong; power or force, energy** (มีกำลัง, มั่นคง, มีอำนาจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The man had to build up his *strength* after his illness.
2. That honest girl has great *strength* of character.

**strong : (adj.) - having much power, force or energy; full of strength** (มีกำลัง, แข็งแรง, เข้มแข็ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The *strong* boy helped his father move the large table.
2. That country has a *strong* leader.

**successful : (adj.)**

**successfully : (adv.) - having success (a result that has been hoped for)** (ความสำเร็จ, ความมีชื่อเสียง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The writer's book was *successful* and sold many copies.
2. My aunt is a *successful* lawyer.

**support : (v) - to show to be true; make more certain** (รับ, สนับสนุน, ช่วยเหลือ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The facts **support** the prisoner's story.
2. The new evidence **supports** my theory.

**symbol** : (n) – something that stands for or represents something else  
(สัญลักษณ์, เครื่องหมาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. The dove is a **symbol** of peace.
2. The mark “+” is the **symbol** for addition.
3. Swastika is the **symbol** of Buddhism.

**tend** : (v) – to tend to or be directed to (คอย, เฝ้า, เลี้ยง, ดูแล)

**Ex.-->**

1. Unclean living conditions **tend** to produce disease.
2. The road **tends** to the left just ahead.
3. It is a fact that modern Communism **tends** to envy or copy the free countries.

**train** : (v) – to develop or influence a person's thoughts, behavior; character; to teach or learn how to do something (ฝึก)

**Ex.-->**

1. The parents **trained** their children to respect rights and feelings of others.
2. My grandfather was **trained** to be a carpenter.

**treat** : (v) - regard, handle, to behave toward or deal with in a certain way (ปฏิบัติกับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The police **treated** the prisoner fairly.
2. He **treated** the old with respect.

**trust** : (n) - belief or confidence in someone of something (เต็มใจ, ไว้วางใจ, ผู้ได้รับความไว้วางใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. I have completed **trust** in his honesty.
2. Donny's parents have **trust** in him.

**unfortunate** : (adj.) - unlucky; unfortunately; (adv.) (เคราะห์ร้าย, โชคร้าย)

**Ex.-->**

**Unfortunately** for you, you're wrong.

**victim** : (n) - a person who is injured, killed or ruined; a person who is cheated or tricked (เหยื่อ, ผู้รับเคราะห์)

**Ex.-->**

1. A friend of ours was the **victim** of an automobile accident.
2. My friend lost twenty dollars as the **victim** of a dishonest storekeeper.



**violence** : (n) – strong physical force; rough force which causes injury or damage (ความรุนแรง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The robbers threatened to sue **violence** if the banker did not open the vault.
2. The **violence** of the wind tore the roof from the house.

**violent** : (adj.) – acting with or coming from strong physical force; caused by or showing strong feeling or emotion (ทำร้าย, รุนแรง, แกร่ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The thief gave the watchman a **violent** blow on the head.
2. My friend has a **violent** temper.

**warmth** : (n) – the state or quality of being warm (full of or showing kind feelings) (อบอุ่น, ทำให้อบอุ่น)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **warmth** of her smile made us feel at ease right away.
2. The actor was pleased by the **warmth** of the audience's applause.

**ASSIGNMENT 9**

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. ***“Problems of Mass Media and Reading in Society”***

***It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.***

***Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***

***Problems of Mass Media and Reading in Society***

In an earliest topic, we had discussed the lure of popular ideas, particular to the younger generation. It is a trend which could, easily, lead to a serious alteration in indigenous Thai culture. Mass media is growing more popular, especially, video tape and satellite broadcasts. While more imaginative or wealth people can invent or purchase a satellite antenna for their homes, the poorer or less educated sector may find applying for one difficult. The increasing role of recorded media will be devastating on the general public. ***Replacing the invaluable information available through printed materials and books, especially, will lead to illiteracy, deepening debts of the rural sector and the closure and unemployment among the printed media.***

***With the books steadily replaced by recorded media, the general public in the urban sector will become as illiterate as the rural sector.*** The urban sector stands, today, as the prestige of the literate the educated and well-informed elite which can direct national policy. However, when the very source of their information vanishes due to indulgence in audio-visual materials, they will be no as little about any subject as their rural compatriots. In a word, they will be longer be above the level which the other two-thirds of Thai society stands at today. They will, finally, lose their leadership role.

***Indulgence in the luxuries of the upper classes, in this case the satellite receiver, video tapes and such, has been and will continue to deepen the growing debt of the rural sector.*** From the beginning, the lower classes envied the upper classes and desired things which they could not get—namely, a new imported car. The number of people who try to live beyond their means in Thailand is incredible but true. So many people go into debt over unnecessary things such as a new car, rather than simply repairing or rebuilding an old one. In the future, the craze will transfer to the satellite receiver, video tape player and so on. The age-old debt to purchase these commodities will finally deepen beyond any ability to prevent or resolve.

***With decreasing readership of books and magazines, publishers and printers will be unemployed.*** After the number of readers of books decreases and illiteracy is more widespread throughout the country, publishers and printers of magazines and books will no longer have a market to publish for. They will lose valuable income and will finally either close shop or change to other occupations. For the writers and producers, their materials will have to be modified for the new audiences or they too may be unemployed.

The cleverest writers and producers may survive the “holocaust” of mass media invasion by their own talents. However, those not concerned with art or writing will have a range of serious effects. Each

effect is highly possible and may occur within the foreseeable future. *The urban sector may increase knowledge but become illiterate while the rural sector will be safer much more than at present. The desire not only for television but also video and antenna will increase debt for them.*

## VOCABULARY REVIEW & SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

### *Problems of Mass Media And Reading in Society*

**alteration** : (n) - change (ความเปลี่ยนแปลง)

**alter** : (v) - to change, to adapt, to adjust (เปลี่ยนแปลง)

Ex.-->

1. Once a person **alters** a law, it is already something else.
2. Radiation **alters** genetic structure, causing mutation.
3. **Alter** only what should be changed. Preserve the rest.

**commodities** : (n) - products (ผลิตภัณฑ์)

Ex.-->

1. The only **commodities** a person should require to are the "necessities of life."
2. **Commodities** include luxuries and imports of all kinds.

**craze** : (n) - wild, uninhibited trend; madness (ลุ่มหลง, หลงใหล)

Ex.-->

1. The drug **craze** means uninhibited addiction to narcotics.
2. Thailand is in the grip of an "automotive **craze**" among others.
3. Realize that you're in a **craze** and you can solve it.

**devastate** : (v) - destroy, damage, harm (ทำลาย, ความเสียหาย, ฉิบหาย)

Ex.-->

1. The explosion **devastated** several hundred of miles of land.
2. Chernobyl was the most **devastating** accident known today.
3. The result of a nuclear accident in Thailand would be **devastating**.

**elite** : (n) – specific high-class group in society; a privileged class (ชนชั้นสูง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The “power **elite**” are those specific officers of a government to whom the authority is narrowly provided.
2. To be a member of the **elite** requires skill, finance and connections with others.
3. The **elite** should never distance themselves from the crowd (but the others are so unequal!).

**holocaust** : (n) – disaster (ความทายนะ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The nuclear **holocaust** envisioned earlier is a reality today – thanks to atomic reactors.
2. The **holocaust** for the 3rd world will be nationwide debt and illiteracy.

**illiteracy** : (n)

**illiterate** : (adj.)– il – not, literate– able to read, unable to read (อ่านไม่ออกเขียนไม่ได้)

**Ex.-->**

1. Many hundred thousand people are still **illiterate**.
- 2. Illiteracy** comes from two possible sources - 1. laziness and  
3. inability to find a teacher.
3. There seem to be **illiterate** people driving these days.

**incredible:** (acfj.) - amazing; unbelieving (ฉงนไม่น่าเชื่อ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The number of people living beyond their means is **incredible**.
2. People say and do **incredible** things.
3. What Man can accomplish when he attempts it seriously is  
**incredible**.

**indulge :** (v) - to attach *oneself to some* thing often heedlessly (ตามใจ,  
สำเร็จสำราญ)

**indulgence :** (n) - (การตามใจตนเอง)

**Ex.-->**

1. People who **indulge** in hard liquor lose their reason.
- 2. Indulging** in a bad habits leads to ruin.
- 3. He indulged** in liquor till he ruined his liver.

**lure :** (n) - attraction (ดึงดูดใจ)

**Jure :** (v) - attract

**Ex.-->**

1. The scent of an exotic perfumes **lures** men to a woman's side.



2. The **lure** of the sea is powerful.
3. In Greek mythology, strange creatures **lured** sailors to wreck on the rocks.

**luxury** : (n) – usually an expensive object or service (ความหรูหรา, ฟุ่มเฟือย)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Luxuries** usually are interpreted as a condominium and imported cars.
2. Desire for **luxury** usually leads to massive debts for the poor, who try to imitate the wealthy.

**prestige** : (n) – fame (ชื่อเสียง, ศักดิ์ศรี)

**Ex.-->**

1. Companies achieve their **prestige** by maintaining business ethics.
2. Loss of **prestige** is due to lack of desire to maintain ethical practices.
3. Never let your **prestige** go to your head. (Easier said than done)

**purchase**: (v) – to buy (ซื้อ)

(n) – buying, act of buying (การซื้อ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The best **purchases** are works of art, good food and wine, and stimulating books.

2. Many people don't know how to use money; they ***purchase*** useless goods like whiskey, cigarettes and the like.
3. To use money correctly, one should know what, where and how to ***purchase*** goods.

***rural sector*** : the agriculturalist; farmer; the provinces (ภาคเกษตร)

***Ex.-->***

1. The ***rural sector*** totals 65 percent of the population.
2. Of that sixty-five percent, forty percent of the ***rural sector*** still uses traditional low-tech methods.
3. The ***rural sector*** remains uneducated and illiterate.

***satellite*** : (n) – orbiting object; a moon; or a mechanical device, sent into space (ดาวเทียม)

***Ex.-->***

1. Russia sent the first ***satellite***, Sputnik, into space.
2. Our moon is, itself, a natural ***satellite***.
3. The extent to which Thais understand “satellite” is IEC broadcasts.

***talent*** : (n) – high; skillfully keen (ความสามารถพิเศษ)

***Ex.-->***

1. Those with ***talent*** can change their skills for the markets.
2. Of course, those with no ***talent*** will find survival difficult.
3. ***Talent*** requires imagination.

**urban sector** : *the businessman and industrialist; the major city*

(ภาคธุรกิจ)

Ex.-->

1. The **urban sector** population is swelling due to migration to the city.
2. Mass urban migration will lead to conflict in the **urban sector**.
3. The answer is to induce 50 percent of the **urban sector** to relocate to cities upcountry.

**vanish** : (v) - *disappear (อันตรธาน)*

Ex.-->

1. The dodo is a **vanishing** species of wildlife.
2. Ghosts often appear and **vanish** in an instance.
3. People today suddenly **vanish** without trace.
4. Objects entering the Bermuda Triangle **vanish** into another time.

**ASSIGNMENT 10**

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. *“Should RU Students Be Involved in Political Affairs ?”*

**It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.**

**Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.**

|   |
|---|
| <b><i>Should RU Students Be Involved in Political Affairs ?</i></b> |
|---|

There may seem little doubt on this matter. That any university campus shows political, social or ecological awareness is never a bad or serious mistake. It is a circumstance which hopefully makes the student a better citizen. Politics plays a growing role in daily life, and no one should complain that “*I don’t care about politics*”. The law makers always are responsible for providing laws to promote general social freedom. ***Ramkhamhaeng University students should be involved in political matters. To begin, Ramkhamhaeng is a university emphasizing political awareness. Furthermore, being active in politics gives the student an opportunity to affect his or her future in Thailand. It will also enrich the students knowledge of his government.***

***Since their first days as universities, both Thammasat and Ramkhamhaeng University have been schools for political awareness.*** Thammasat stands out more as the origin of the Seri Thai movement in World War II; however, since the days of the protest urging General Tanom to resign, Ramkhamhaeng has been a hot bed of political and social interest. Apart from general text and lectures, the best way to increase understanding of an idea is to practice it. Given the theories of political science, the students should next practice them to a safe extent to test whether they are true, useful, etc. Ramkhamhaeng has successfully implemented this by organizing student political parties. The result of the practice is that the student later realizes which ideas are correct and important.

*The student also learns to be socio-politically active and, henceforth, a better citizen.* The successful implementation of the political parties above mentioned helps the student to understand the formation and general activities of a political party and its interaction with other parties. Study government programs help the student understand the activities of his or her national government. This further helps the student shape his government to guarantee the rights of the general public.

*Generally, a successfully implemented student government can be a model for future national governments, as the officers of those governments may be elected from former student government officers.* Therefore, sound understanding of government is essential. Until recently, the elected officers of governments had only two major objectives : one is to sustain power in government for that officer's personal benefit. The other is to increase that officer's allowance although we may suppose that he intended it for his constituency. Understanding of government processes coupled with an unselfish motive to be in government can ensure that succeeding governments perform successfully on behalf of the general public.

Altogether, there are many good reasons for RU students to be involved in politics. What is more important is that his or her motives are pure and to what extent he or she is involved. All citizens should remain aware of their environment. *From our environment, we can learn many things. Politics is one aspect of our society which we should never ignore.*

## VOCABULARY REVIEW & SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

### *Should RU Students Be Involved in Political Affairs ?*

**allowance:** (n) – money; funds used for specific purposes (เงินบพิเศษ,  
เงินให้ใช้)

**Ex.-->**

1. MPs' **allowance** should insist on being spent for a constituency only.
2. When I was in senior high school, I was given an **allowance** of 5 dollar per week.

**constituency:** (n) – place of voting / seeking votes (จังหวัดที่มีการเลือกตั้ง,  
ประชาชนที่ลงคะแนนเสียง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Bangkok **Constituency** One, is the constituency of the Thai Citizen Party.
2. MPs allowance should be issued to be used for the MP's **constituency** only.

**enrich :** (v) – add to; improve (เพิ่ม, ทำให้ดีขึ้น)

**Ex.-->**

1. Our product is **enriched** with three essential vitamins.
2. Cultural events can **enrich** people's lives.



**implement** : (v) - to put into effect (นำมาปฏิบัติ)

Ex.-->

1. Once issued, a law should be **implemented**.
2. There are laws and rules which should be **implemented** slowly.

**intend** : (v) - to mean; to plan to...(ตั้งใจ, มีเจตนา, หมายความว่า)

Ex.-->

1. Seeing the glare in his eyes, Naree asked Thongchai. "What do **intend** to do with me?"
2. I **intend** to do only what is best for the country.
3. Selfish people never **intend** any good except for themselves.

**origin** : (n) - source (แหล่งที่มา)

Ex.-->

1. Our **origin** lies in the stars.
2. The **origin** of several species may be an alien planet.
3. Thammasat University was the **origin** of Seri Thai.

**stand out** - to be noticed (for) (เด่น)

Ex.-->

1. Thammasat University **stands out** as a University of Political Science.
2. Ramkhamhaeng University **stands out** over the past twenty years for political protest.

**ASSIGNMENT 11**

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. ***“Teaching Machines Should Replace Teachers”***

***It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.***

***Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***

# The Jotted Outline

## ***Teaching Machines Should Replace Teacher***

### **1. Thesis Sentence**

*Teaching machines should replace teachers because they are more objective, efficient, and versatile.*

### **II. ' Objective**

- machines are detached and personally uninvolved; therefore objective information is transmitted in an unbiased and impersonal way
- machines don't have favorites or personal prejudices
- they don't know you and your family history
- it won't have expectations of you
- they are advantageous for shy people, and for those who hide their intelligence for social reasons
- students is free from a teacher's moods, likes, and dislikes
- lesson quality won't change with moods of teacher
- more objective also for the student
- he won't choose to study or not study something because of the teacher's personality

### *III. Efficient*

- computers contain vast stores of knowledge
- machines have endurance, accuracy, and patience
- they are always available for use
- they can be stopped at any time and continued later from that point
- teaching would remain consistent
- they don't make mistakes
- they can repeat information tirelessly

### *IV. Versatile*

- teacher's lessons are geared to the group average
- machines are more adaptable to both slower and faster students
- teaching methods could be more varied and interesting with machines
- games, video and sound could be utilized
- presentations on different subjects could be more thoroughly researched and prepared by experts
- a subject could be taught from many angles and approaches
- the student would be free to agree or disagree without personal cost

### *V. Conclusion*

***Machines are really more objective, efficient, and versatile than a human being.***

---

**Teaching Machines Should Replace Teachers**

---

Many people might be shocked or appealed with the idea that teaching machines should replace teachers. But think back to your own experience with teachers. Maybe you attended high school or university after an older brother or sister had already started. “Are you smart just like your brother?” some might have asked, already expecting a certain kind of behaviour. Or maybe there was one who had favorites and just didn’t seem to like you, and never had extra time for you. Or whose teaching ability depended on the mood he was in. Perhaps machines and computers appear impersonal and sterile. ***But from the opposite angle, it could be argued that teaching machines should replace teachers because they are more objective, efficient, and versatile.***

**A machine is detached and personally uninvolved with the student and therefore truly objective.** It simply transmits information, in an unbiased and impersonal way. It will not play favorites and won’t have prejudices toward him. It doesn’t know his brothers and sisters and it won’t have expectations of him he must fulfill. It won’t humiliate a student who is shy or self-conscious and lacks confidence in front of a teacher or a group. And it could be a liberating device for those who, for peer group reasons, feel they must suppress their intelligence, (for example, traditionally, women in most countries shouldn’t show themselves to be smarter than men.) Students would be exempt from being at the mercy of a teacher’s moods, and likes and dislikes, and the lesson quality would not depend on his emotional state. Thus, the

student's position becomes more objective, also. He won't study or drop a subject because he likes or dislikes the teacher.

***No human could possess the vast storehouse of knowledge and information of a computer. And he could never compete with a machine on the levels of endurance and accuracy.*** Surely a machine is ultimately more efficient. It can repeat something endlessly without losing patterns. It won't get fed up or tired. It is available any time of the day and can be simply stopped at will. And it can continue later without forgetting where it stopped. The quality of the teaching would remain consistent and not fluctuate as it would with the human element. A machine wouldn't make errors, and could repeat the same point over and over tirelessly, patiently, and consistently.

A teacher's pace usually has to adapt to the whole group. He cannot order to the most intelligent or to the least, and therefore his lessons are adapted to the group average, or norm. ***A machine is much more versatile.*** It can replay endlessly for slower people or those who have a particular problem with one point. A work accelerated student could simply move on ahead at his own speed. Thus machines can be adapted to each student. The teaching could be done in a variety of interesting ways. Games could be employed. Video and sound could be incorporated with the material to be transmitted. Presentations could be prepared and taped by people skilled in related fields. Teaching material would be more thorough and the subjects properly researched. The same subject could be taught from different angles, approaches, and points of

view. And the student would be perfectly free to agree or disagree with no personal consequences.

In America, now, there is a nine year old boy in second year university science. His parents were busy immigrants and, being a only child, he spent his early years with only the television. But actually, learning even in a classroom, is ultimately an individual experience. Perhaps schools could become more centres with private lab facilities and with the teacher's position being more that of co-ordinator of the information to be taught. The "missing human element" could be accommodated in discussion groups with an exchange of ideas. But **machines are really more objective, *efficient*, and *versatile than a human being*.**

## VOCABULARY REVIEW &amp; SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

|  |
|--|
| --- --<br><b>Teaching Machines Should Replace Teachers</b> |
|--|

**ability** : (n) - *power of doing* (ความสามารถ)

**Ex-->**

1. He has the **ability** to carry heavy loads.
2. Bob is a student of unusual **ability**.

**accelerate**: (v) - *to speed up; move faster* (เร่งความเร็ว)

**Ex-->**

The car **accelerated** as it went down the hill.

**accommodate**: (v) - *to have room for; hold* (จุคนได้, บรรจุได้)

**Ex-->**

1. That movie theatre **accommodate** 600 people.
2. The policeman **accommodated** us when we asked him for direction.

**accuracy**: (n) - *a being without mistakes correctness* (ความแม่นยำ)

**Ex-->**

1. She did her work with **accuracy**.
2. Bob was praised for his **accuracy** in arithmetic.



**actually:** (adv.) *in fact, really* (โดยแท้จริงแล้ว)

**Ex-->**

1. He said that he stayed home because he was sick, but **actually** he wanted to watch the baseball game on television.
2. Jack likes to pretend he is older than Bob, but **actually** Bob is older.

**adapt:** (v) - **change** to *fit needs or new conditions* (ปรับสภาวะ, ปรับตัว)

**Ex-->**

1. Old people find it difficult to **adapt** themselves to modern life.
2. When the family moved to Florida, they had to **adapt** to the warm weather.

**ahead:** (adv.) - in front, *in advance* (ล่วงหน้า)

**Ex-->**

1. He walked **ahead** of me in the line.
2. **Go ahead** with your plans for the party.

**angle:** (n) - *a particular way of thinking* (แง่มุม)

**Ex-->**

1. We must consider this problem from all **angles**.
2. Jeff was having trouble solving the problem, so he tried to look at it from another **angle**.

**appall** : (v) - fill with horror, *shock*, or fear (สะพึงกลัว, ใจหายใจคว่ำ)

**Ex-->**

1. They were **appalled** by the sight of the bloody shirt.
2. We were **appalled** by the news of the airplane crash.

**appear** : (v) - to *come into* sight; *be seen*, to *come* before *the* public  
(ปรากฏ)

**Ex-->**

1. The snowy mountain peaks **appeared** in the distance.
2. That actor has often **appeared** on television.

**approach**: (v) - *move near to* in space, time, *quality*, etc. (เข้าไปใกล้)

**Ex-->**

1. The car **approached** the city.
2. The boy **approached** his father for permission.

**argue**: (v) - *offer reasons for or against something*, *disagree* (โต้แย้ง)

**Ex-->**

1. They **argued** against going home.
2. The drunken man **argued** loudly.

**available**: (adj.) - *obtainable*; *ready for use or service* (หาได้, มีให้)

**Ex-->**

1. **Use** every **available** remedy to save the child.
2. This shirt is **available** in several different colors.

**average: (n)** – normal; ordinary ( โดยเฉลี่ย, ทั่วเฉลี่ย)

**Ex-->**

1. She is an **average** student.
2. The attendance at school today is better than **average**.

**behaviour: (n)** – act or manner **of** behaving oneself; **conduct** (พฤติกรรม)

**Ex-->**

1. His unkind **behaviour** offended other people.
2. Jack won a prize for good **behaviour** at school.

**cater: (v)** – provide what is required (ให้ความพอใจ, สนองตอบ)

**Ex-->**

1. This magazine **caters** for people who like art.
2. He publishes several magazines, some that **cater** to boys, others to girls, etc.

**confidence: (n)** – complete trust, a feeling **of** faith in oneself (ความเชื่อมั่น)

**Ex-->**

1. Mother has **confidence** in Bob's honesty.
2. She has **confidence** in herself.

**conscious: (adj.)** **aware of oneself and the people and thing around**

one, awake; mentally active (สำนึก)

**Ex-->**

1. She was **conscious** of someone's presence.

2. The injured man was still conscious.

**consequence:** (n) - result (ผลต่อเนื่อง)

**Ex-->**

1. He fell ill and the **consequence** was that he lost his position.
2. If you are determined to act so foolishly, you must be ready to take the **consequence**.

**consistent:** (adj.) - state of being or acting the same way (ไม่เปลี่ยนแปลง, คงที่)

**Ex-->**

1. He was **consistent** in his views.
2. This is not **consistent** with what you told me yesterday.

**continue:** (v) keep doing or being (ดำเนินต่อไป)

**Ex-->**

1. The rain **continued** all week.
2. We will **continue** our meeting after lunch.

**depend :** (v) - rely on for *help* or support, be controlled by (ขึ้นอยู่กับ, พึ่งพา)

**Ex-->**

1. Children **depend** on their parents for food and shelter.
2. Whether we will go on the trip **depends** on the weather.

**device:** (v) - a *tool* or machine designed *for a special purpose* (เครื่องมือ, เป็นสัญญาณ)

**Ex-->**

1. The steering **device** on my car is broken.
2. The child's tears were a **device** to get attention.

**discussion:** (n) - a *serious talk* (การอภิปราย, การถกเถียงปัญหา)

**Ex-->**

1. John and Bob had a **discussion** about cricket.
2. At the meeting there was **discussion** about the men who were standing for election.

**efficient:** (adj.) - getting the best results *with the least effort* (ประสิทธิผล)

**Ex-->**

1. The workman is very **efficient**. He is able, and does his work well. He gets results.
2. An automobile is more **efficient** for rapid travel than a horse.

**element:** (n) - one of the *basic* principles *or* necessary parts *of* something (มูลฐาน, วัตถุธาตุ)

**Ex-->**

1. He has mastered the **elements** of the English language.
2. Iron is an **element**.

**emotion:** (n) - a strong *feeling of any* kind; a particular *feeling* (อารมณ์)

**Ex-->**

1. Love, hate, and fear are all **emotions**.
2. He could not think of his dead wife without **emotion**.

**emotional:** (adj.) – having to do with the emotions (ด้วยอารมณ์, อารมณ์เสีย)

**Ex-->**

1. An **emotional** woman is normally aggressive.
2. Don't be **emotional** in public.

**employ :** (v) – give work to for wages; hire (ว่าจ้าง)

**Ex-->**

1. That store **employs** many people.
2. The methods he **employed** were very practical.

**endurance:** (n) – ability to stand something (ความทรหดอดทน)

**Ex-->**

1. The explorers showed amazing **endurance**.
2. Cheap shoes do not have the **endurance** of better shoes.

**endless:** (adj.) – having no limit or end; going on forever (ไม่มีจุดจบ)

**Ex-->**

1. There were **endless** miles of desert.
2. The circle is **endless**.

**error :** (n) – an incorrect act or belief; a mistake (ทำผิด, หลงผิด)

**Ex-->**

1. He made an **error** in addition.
2. You are in **error** about her age.

**exchange** : (n) – a giving of one thing for another; a trade (การแลกเปลี่ยน)

**Ex-->**

1. He gave two pictures in **exchange** for a book.
2. There was an **exchange** of ideas between the two leaders.

**exempt** : (v) – to excuse (ยกเว้นให้)

**Ex-->**

1. He was **exempted** from taking the final test because of his good marks during the year.
  2. To **exempt** a man from service in the army.
- : (adj.) – free from doing or giving something (ยกเว้นให้ไม่ต้องทำหรือจ่าย)
3. Church land is usually **exempt** from real estate taxes.

**expect**: (v) – look forward to; look for confidently (คาดการณ์)

**Ex-->**

1. He **expects** her to come on Friday.
2. We **expect** that it will rain today.

**expectation**: (n) – something expected, excitement of expecting  
(การคาดการณ์ล่วงหน้า, สิ่งโลดใจ)

**Ex-->**

1. Getting a watch for Christmas was Mary's one **expectation**.

2. Mary was full of expectation.

**experience:** (n) - anything that happens to one (ประสบการณ์)

**Ex-->**

1. Going to the circus was a new experience to Sally.
2. Father has had much **experience** driving cars.

**extra.**' (adj.) - greater than ordinary (มากกว่าปกติ)

**Ex-->**

1. He received more money for the **extra** work he did.
2. Mary receive **extra** spending money for Christmas shopping.  
She had more money than she usually has.

**facility** : (n) - ease or still in doing, acting, etc. (เครื่องอำนวยความสะดวก)

**Ex-->**

1. We admired his **facility** in playing the piano.
2. This kitchen has the latest **facilities** for cooking.

**favorite** : (adj.) - preferred; liked best (ชอบที่สุด)

**Ex-->**

1. Blue is my **favorite** color.
2. Summer is her **favorite** time of year.



**fed up with:** (idiom) – out of patience with, bored with  
(เอียน, เบื่อเหลือทน)

**Ex-->**

I am **fed up with** his laziness and carelessness.

**fluctuate:** (v) – move irregularly, up and down or from side to side  
(แปรปรวน)

**Ex-->**

1. The price of gasoline in Thailand is quite **fluctuating**.
2. To **fluctuate** between hopes and fears.

**fulfill:** (v) – do; cause to happen; complete, satisfy (ตอบสนอง, ศรัทธา)

**Ex-->**

1. By completing college, he **fulfilled** his mother's dreams.
2. Bob can **fulfill** the wishes of the boys and girls by winning the race.

**humiliate:** (v) – cause to lose pride and self-respect, especially in the presence of others (เป็นเหตุให้ต่ำต้อย, เลื่อมถอย, เลื่อมศรัทธา)

**Ex-->**

1. She has **humiliated** by her daughter's rudeness.
2. He was **humiliated** when he failed the best after bragging that he was the best student.

**immigrant:** (n) – a person from a foreign land who enters another country for the purpose of making his home there  
(ผู้อพยพ)

**Ex-->**

1. If you should go to live in Canada, you would be an **immigrant** there.
2. European **immigrants** in America.

**impersonal:** (adj.) – not referring to any particular person or thing  
(ไม่เฉพาะตัว)

**Ex-->**

1. An **impersonal** remark.
2. An **impersonal** discussion.

**incorporate:** (adj.) – combined in one body or group; formed into a corporation (รวมเข้ากัน, รวมกันเป็นบริษัท)

**Ex-->**

Video and sound could be **incorporate** with the material to be transmitted.

**individual:** (adj.) – personal; all one's own (แห่งเอกัตถะ, เป็นบุคคล)

**Ex-->**

1. Each child has an **individual** way of writing. It is different from every other child's way.
2. The students' rooms reflected their **individual** interests.

**information:** (n) – knowledge; facts; news (ความรู้, ข้อมูล)

**Ex-->**

1. He got the **information** he needed from the library.
2. For your **information**, I will be away on Friday.

**intelligence:** (n) – the ability to know, understand, and reason (ไหวพริบปัญญา)

**Ex-->**

1. She is a woman of great **intelligence**.
2. The army's **intelligence** showed that the enemy was going to attack at dawn.

**intelligent:** (adj.) – having or showing intelligence; bright (มีสติปัญญา, หลึกแหลม)

**Ex-->**

1. That was an **intelligent** question to ask.
2. It was **intelligent** of Spot to learn how to open the door with his paw.

**involve:** (v) – include as a necessary part (พัวพัน, เกี่ยวโยง)

**Ex-->**

1. His work **involves** a great deal of travel.
2. He is **involved** with the police.

**kind:** (n) – class; sort; type, a sort or type (ชนิด, ประเภท)

**Ex-->**

1. What **kind** of dog is that?

2. What **kind** of dog does Jack have? Is it a spaniel, a terrier, or a collie?

**knowledge:** (n) - *the things that we know; all we have learned* (ความรู้)

**Ex-->**

1. Jack has much **knowledge** of boats.
2. To fix a car you need some **knowledge** of machines.

**lack:** (v) - *be without, have none* (ขาด, ไม่มีพอ)

**Ex-->**

1. They **lacked** courage.
2. We cannot go to the show, because **we lack** the money.

**level.** (n) - *the height to which a thing rises or reaches* (ระดับ)

**Ex-->**

1. The flood water rose to a **level** of sixty feet.
2. Jack comes to the **level** of father's shoulder.

**liberate:** (v) - *set free; release; take time* (ปล่อยให้เป็นอิสระ)

**Ex-->**

1. Father **liberated** the lamb that was caught in the fence.
2. The prisoners of war were **liberated**.

**machine:** (n) - *a device with moving parts used to do work* (เครื่องจักร)

**Ex-->**

1. My mother has a sewing **machine**.
2. A bicycle is sometime called a **machine**.

**material:** (n) – anything that may be worked upon or developed into something else (วัตถุดิบ)

**Ex-->**

1. His own life provided the **material** for his novel.
2. Mary's dress is made of very fine **material**.

**mercy:** (n) – kindness toward those who should be punished; the power to be kind or forgive (ความเมตตาปราณี)

**Ex-->**

1. They showed **mercy** toward their enemies.
2. They were dependent upon the **mercy** of the judge.

**might:** (v) – one form of the word may means possible (อาจจะเป็น...)

**Ex-->**

1. If she had been stronger, she **might** have recovered.
2. Jack **might** have won the race if he had not stumbled.

**mood:** (n) – a state of mind; the way one feels about oneself (อารมณ์)

**Ex-->**

1. He was usually in a happy **mood**.
2. Baby is in a playful **mood**.

**norm** : (n) – standard, the usual or regular condition or level, (normal)

(เกณฑ์ปกติ)

Ex-->

1. There was much more rain than **normal** during the last month.
2. Jack's weight is **normal**. He weighs as much as most boys of his age.

**objective**: (n) – goal or aim of what one does (วัตถุประสงค์)

Ex-->

1. His **objective** was to be rich.
2. An **objective** point.

**opposite**: (adj.) – against; exactly at the other extreme (ตรงข้าม)

Ex-->

1. They held **opposite** ideas on the subject.
2. Up is **opposite** to down.

**own**: (adj.) – belonging completely to oneself (เป็นเจ้าของ)

Ex-->

1. Is that his **own** horse, or is it borrowed?
2. This is my **own** house, (or this house is my own.)

**pace**: (n) – a person's step, the rate of movement, development, etc.

(ฝีเท้า, ก้าวย่าง)

Ex-->

1. The man worked at a slow **pace**.

2. The man are working at a fast **pace**.

**particular:** (adj.) – specific, special or outstanding (เป็นพิเศษ)

Ex-->

1. There is one **particular** point I want warn you about.
2. That **particular** chair belonged to my father.

**patience:** (n) – the ability to endure pain, troubles (ความอดทน)

Ex-->

1. She endured the long delay with **patience**.
2. We do not realize how much **patience** mother has with us.

**patient:** (adj.) – showing patience (อดทน)

Ex-->

1. He was **patient** despite the long wait.
2. He was **patient** with the children.

**perfectly:** (adv.) – completely or entirely (อย่างสมบูรณ์แบบ)

Ex-->

1. It is **perfectly** all right for you to go to the cinema if you finish your work first.
2. **Perfectly** satisfied.

**personally:** (adv.) – not with the help of others; by oneself (โดยส่วนตัว)

Ex-->

1. I answered him **personally**.
2. The senator answered by letter **personally**.

**point:** (n) – the most important idea or fact (ประเด็น)

**Ex-->**

1. I did not understand the **point** of his story.
2. Mother did not see the **point** of father's joke.

**point of view:** (n) – a way in which or position from which something is looked at or considered (แนวคิด)

**Ex-->**

I liked what she bought, but from her husband's **point of view** I it was expensive.

**position:** (n) – job; employment, social or professional rank (ตำแหน่ง)

**Ex-->**

1. He hopes to find a teaching **position**.
2. The judge holds a **position** of trust in the community.

**possess:** (v) – have: own (เป็นเจ้าของ)

**Ex-->**

1. They no longer **possess** much land.
2. This house is all that I **possess**.



**prejudice:** (n) – opinion, usually unfavorable, formed without sufficient knowledge, thought, or reason (อคติ)

**Ex-->**

1. He had a **prejudice** against popular music.
2. People show **prejudice** when they dislike other people because they belong to a different religion or a different race.

**presentation:** (n) – the act of presenting something offered or given (การนำเสนอ)

**Ex-->**

1. The **presentation** of a new play will be tomorrow.
2. A **presentation** copy must be submitted.

**private:** (adj.) – belonging to a particular person or group, personal (เป็นส่วนตัว)

**Ex-->**

1. My home is **private** property.
2. I discuss **private** matters only with my wife and close friends.

**properly:** (adv.) – suitably; correctly (ถูกต้อง, เหมาะสม)

**Ex-->**

1. Behave **properly**.
2. The dentist showed us how to brush our teeth **properly**.

**quality:** (n) – excellence; value (คุณภาพ)

**Ex-->**

1. The furniture that store sells is known for its *quality*.
2. Only materials of the highest *quality* were accepted.

**reason : (n) - cause** for a belief **or act; purpose**, something **said** that explains (เหตุผล)

**Ex-->**

1. What is the *reason* for this meeting?
2. He could give no *reason* for being in the building.

**relate : (v) - connect, associate, be concerned with** (เกี่ยวข้อง. สัมพันธ์)

**Ex-->**

1. It was natural to *relate* his disappearance to the disappearance of the money.
2. I am not *related* to him in any way.

**repeat : (v) - say again, do or make again** (ซ้ำ)

**Ex-->**

1. She *repeated* the accusation.
2. If *you repeat* that mistake, you will be punished.

**replace: (v) - substitute another for** (ทดแทน)

**Ex-->**

1. Mother *replaced* the broken mirror.
2. The bowler was *replaced* by a younger boy.

**research: (n)** – careful study to discover correct information

(การวิจัยค้นคว้า)

**Ex-->**

Scientists are continuing **research** on peaceful uses of atomic energy.

**research: (v)** – do research (ทำการค้นคว้า, ทำวิจัย)

**Ex-->**

He has not yet **researched** that aspect of the subject.

**science: (n)** – **any** branch **of such** knowledge (ศาสตร์)

**Ex-->**

1. The **science** of medicine is changing rapidly.
2. Mathematics is the **science** of numbers and amounts.

**shock: (v)** – **cause** to **feel** sudden astonishment horror, etc. (เป็นเหตุให้

ตกใจกลัวสุดขีด, ทำให้พิศวงงงงวย)

**Ex-->**

1. Her appearance **shocked** us.
2. The boy's dishonesty **shocked** the grocer.

**shy: (adj.)**– bashful, uneasy in front **of people**, especially strangers

(ขี้อาย)

**Ex-->**

1. Baby is **shy**.
2. She is a **shy** child.

**simply: (adv.) - in a simple way; plainly** (ทำได้ง่าย ๆ, ง่าย ๆ)

Ex-->

1. She did the work **simply** and quickly.
2. He **simply** walked away from us.

**smart: (adj.) - quick to learn; showing intelligence; clever**

(ฉลาดหลักแหลม)

Ex-->

1. Both children are very **smart**.
2. Jack is a **smart** fellow. He learns many things easily.

**speed: (n) - rate of motion or movement** (ความเร็ว)

Ex-->

1. The **speed** limit is 30 miles an hour. That is as fast as one may drive.
2. The **speed** of this train is 90 miles an hour.

**spent: (v) - past tense and participle of spend** (ใช้เวลา, ใช้เงิน)

Ex-->

1. He had **spent** his vacation in Europe.
2. He **spends** too much time at play.

**state: (n) - the condition of a person or thing** (สภาวะ)

Ex-->

1. He was in an angry **state**,

2. Mary was in an excited **state** on the night of the form play.

**sterile:** (adj.) - producing no result, dull; lifeless (ขาดรสชาติ)

**Ex-->**

Medical tests showed that my wife was **sterile**.

**storehouse:** (n) - a place where goods are *kept* (คลัง)

**Ex-->**

A **storehouse** of information is badly needed for the research center.

**suppress:** (v) - subdue by force or authority; crush (ระงับ, กำจัด)

**Ex-->**

1. The army was called to **suppress** the result.

2. He **suppressed** his anger.

**therefore:** (adv.) - as a result; consequently; for this reason or purpose  
(ด้วยเหตุนี้, ฉะนั้น)

**Ex-->**

1. She left home late and **therefore** missed the bus.

2. Mary had a bad cold, and **therefore** could not go to school.

**tireless:** (adj.) - energetic, not easily tired (ทรงพลัง, ไม่เหนื่อยหน่าย)

**Ex-->** 1. Napoleon was a **tireless** worker.

2. **Tireless** energy.

**toward:** (prep) - *with respect to; about* (ต่อ...เพื่อ...)

**Ex-->**

1. How do you feel **toward** this plan?
2. They are working **toward** a better understanding.

**tradition:** (n) - *customs and beliefs which have been followed for generations and which are passed from elders to the young* (ขนบธรรมเนียมประเพณี)

**Ex-->**

1. It is a **tradition** in that family for the sons to study medicine.
2. It is a **tradition** in that family for the eldest son to become a soldier.

**transmit:** (v) - *pass from one person or place to another* (แพร่ขยายต่อไปยัง)

**Ex-->**

1. Her illness was **transmitted** to other members of the family.
2. His message was **transmitted** by radio.

**truly:** (adv.) - *really* (แน่แท้)

**Ex-->**

I am **truly** coming to see you.

**ultimate:** (adj.) - *greatest; farthest; highest* (สูงสุด, สุดยอด)

**Ex-->**

1. The plane reached its **ultimate** speed during the best flight.

2. What is his **ultimate** goal?

**versatile:** (adj.) ~ able to do different kinds of work equally well,  
turning easily from one subject to another (สามารถรวม  
ตัว, คล่องไปทุกอย่าง)

**Ex-->**

1. Bill can get another job easily because he is so **versatile**.
2. This **versatile** tool is useful for many purposes.

**variety:** (n)- *the state of being varied, difference; change*  
(ความหลากหลาย)

**Ex-->**

1. Lack of **variety** made him bored with his job.
2. That store sells a **variety** of magazines.

|                |
|----------------|
| ASSIGNMENT 1 2 |
|----------------|

*Directions: Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. "Thai Classical Dance and Western Ballet"*

***It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.***

***Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***



**Thai Classical Dance and Western Ballet**

Historically and aesthetically, Thai classical dance is different from western ballet. **Thai classical dance developed most likely from Khmer culture, uses different techniques and less time than ballet. It uses different techniques, usually the posture and movement of hands in proportion to the body. The time used to present a Thai classical dance is shorter, usually one single performance, while classical ballet is longer and tells a longer story.**

*Thai classical dance may have started in Khmer culture.* Defining KHMER as an indigenous people and culture inhabiting the area which is now Laos, Kampuchea and Thailand specifically, it is very possible that the original inhabitant designed the style of dance now used by both Kampuchea and Thailand. This style is a tradition and traditions begin in early history. After the territory divided and renamed to these three countries, language also changed but culture remained similar. Ballet was an indigenously European item.

*Thai classical dance requires less time than western ballet.* Thai dance students may begin as adolescents or as young adults. The time required for **actual** study may be only a few years or months, according to personal aptitude and flexibility. Furthermore, older people can still dance. Ballet is started as a young child due to the time, availability of mind and flexibility of a small child. Western teachers believe that

children are more receptive, able to learn and are softer than older people; hence, they make better dancers when they are older.

*Finally, Thai dance techniques are simpler and less time-consuming than ballet.* Thai classical dance bends and curves as much as ballet except that most flexibility is in the waists, knees and fingers. This is due to the tradition of telling a story with simple gestures. Counterpose this against the complexity of ballet, which not only used full body gestures in fancy movements but also backdrops to tell the story. In Thai dance, a hand gesture may mean many things to its viewer whereas the ballet dancer uses his or her entire body to tell the same thing.

On the whole, both styles are graceful and beautiful. **However, Thai dance is less time consuming to perform and dance steps and postures are simpler to learn.** Its origin is, simply, Asian and may have been adapted from Khmer traditional dance-or Indian. *Contrarily, western ballet is European in origin and presents a longer story; therefore, the performance concludes at the conclusion of the story.* Ballet does not use hands more than body and postures in its presentation as well.

## VOCABULARY REVIEW &amp; SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

**Thai Classical Dance And Western Ballet**

**adolescent** : (n) - young person between childhood and adulthood (วัยรุ่น)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Adolescents** start to have their own ideas at 15 years.
2. When I was an **adolescent**, *I still ignored* girls.
3. I was a totally imaginative *adolescent* at 18 years.

**aesthetic** : (adj.) - artistic (สุนทรีย์)

**Ex.-->**

1. Nature and traditional architecture have *aesthetic* value.
2. By Western standards, the woman's anatomy has the highest *aesthetic* value.
3. Modern man has less *aesthetic* appreciation than earlier civilizations.

**backdrop** : artificial, *painted* background (ม่านหลังเวที, ฉาก)

**Ex.-->**

1. *Backdrops* were a common feature of Western drama.
2. It was relatively easy to change a *backdrop* in the theatre.
3. The *backdrop* told the audience where the drama took place.

**counterpose** : (v) - *place...against; compare* (เปรียบเทียบ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Try to **counterpose** traditional values with those of the time.
2. Nowadays people still **counterpose** Western culture and Thai culture.

**entire** : (adj.) - total, full, complete (ทั้งหมด, สมบูรณ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. They waited to hear the **entire** story.
2. Balinese dancers dance with their **entire** bodies.
3. Few people finish the **entire** meal despite paying for it all.
4. Listen to the **entire** lecture before asking questions.

**flexible** : (adj.) - **able to bend**; stretch **or** change shape (ยืดหยุ่น)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Flexible** people can adapt to change easily.
2. A **flexible** schedule means "**no fixed time**".
3. Young trees, grass and animals are very **flexible**.

**indigenous** : (adj.) - **developing in one specific place; native** (ท้องถิ่น)

**Ex.-->**

1. Curry is mostly **indigenous** of India.
2. Hieroglyphs were **indigenous** to Egypt.
3. Khmer and **indigenous** to the land of Kampuchea.

**inhabit** : (v) -  *dwell; reside; live* (อาศัยอยู่, มีชีวิตร่วม)

**Ex.-->**

1. Various species of wild animals **inhabit** these woods.
2. Man **inhabited** the forest and learned to co-exist.
3. Crazy people **inhabit** our modern cities.

**posture** : (n) -  *position and expression of the body* (ท่าทาง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Good **posture** is part of a good student.
2. Poor **posture** means leaning too close to the bookshelf.
3. One's **posture** says something about habit.

**proportion** : (n) -  *size, dimension* (สัดส่วน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Much of Thai design lacks precise **proportion**.
2. Many traditional ideas are out of **proportion** in modern settings.
3. The heads of all animals are always smaller in **proportion** to the taros.

**receive** : (v) -  *to accept into; to get* (ได้รับ)

**receptive** : (adj.) (รับรู้), **reception** : (n) (การรับรู้)

**Ex.-->**

1. Most Thai ladies are not **receptive** to Western sexual habits.  
(i.e. sleeping together.)

2. With a special antenna, people can receive international broadcasts.
3. Northeastern Thai farmers still wait to *receive* rainfall.

*territory* : (n) - **land area; space** (อาณาเขต, พรหมแดน)

*Ex.-->*

1. Ancient Khmer divided into 3 *territories* :- Kampuchea, Laos and Thailand.
2. European *territory* is more diverse; there are France, Italy, Spain, Germany, Portugal, Switzerland to the West; and the former Communist Bloc to the East.
3. A bird will fight to protect its chosen *territory*.

**ASSIGNMENT 13**

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this *given topic*. “What Does It Take to Be an Artist?”

***It is more useful to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your **unified composition**. Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***

# The Jotted Outline

## What Does It Take to Be an Artist?

### 1. Thesis

*An artist must believe in himself, be dedicated to his work, and be able to cope with an erratic and b-regular lifestyle.*

### II. Believe in himself

- Van Gogh continued in spite of rejection  
artists want recognition
- sense of futility if no one understands
- many artists ahead of their time
- opinion of masses not truth
- monetary success doesn't reflect ability
- artist shouldn't adapt to public
- must be patient, confident, and take chance  
self-belief is insulation from others
- confidence necessary for production

### III. Dedication to his work

- necessary for progress and development
- necessary to work consistently



- money often a problem
- must be committed to continue in face of hardship, and personal criticisms
- when creative inspiration comes, it must be protected and nurtured

#### ***IV. Able to cope with an erratic and irregular lifestyle***

- many artists
- work is often sporadic
- shows may be successful or unsuccessful
- no regular income
- future is uncertain
- public is fickle
- in hard times, art is less in demand
- “hand-to-mouth” existence

#### ***V. Conclusion***

Many people romanticize artists’ lives. But artists often work under great personal strain and hardship. ***In order to be productive, an artist must believe in himself, be dedicated to his work, and be able to cope with an erratic and irregular lifestyle.***

***What Does It Take to Be an Artist ?***

If Vincent Van Gogh were alive today, he would be able to have a house in Beverly Hills, an estate in Tahiti, and a condominium in St. Tropez. He'd be able to own several Rolls Royces, and more than one Mercedes Benz. Yet in his life, he sold only one painting. He was well-acquainted with poverty. Yet today, his paintings are auctioned for hundreds of thousands of dollars. Art Galleries around the world fight to possess his work. But none of this is of any benefit to him now. Success arrived after his death. Perhaps if he had listened to those around him in his time, these paintings would not be with us today. But luckily for us, his creative passion was very strong. Being an artist is not an easy profession, and it takes a particular personality to survive the difficulties involved therein. ***An artist must believe in himself, be dedicated to his work, and be able to cope with an erratic and irregular lifestyle.***

If Van Gogh has listened totally to the opinions of others, there would be little record left of his work, today. His brilliance and artistic contribution to the world would have been lost completely. He did, in fact, destroy hundreds of paintings by his own hands, as a result of his personal frustration and mental turmoil. ***But he believed in himself enough to continue in spite of rejection by others. Most artists, deep down, want recognition.*** Art is a form of communication, and if no one understands or relates to the work, the creator can easily feel a sense of

futility. But many artists are ahead of their time. This was the case with Van Gogh. Unfortunately, whether or not one is defined as a good artist or not, depends upon the opinion of the masses. But such an opinion should not be taken as the truth. In the same way, monetary success and the number of paintings sold, should not be seen as a reflection of ability. A sincere artist realizes how fickle the mass opinions are. He won't try to do what is popular in order to gain recognition. He'll work patiently and with confidence, and be willing to take chances and risk rejection. He may even be the only one who believes in his work. But that will be reason enough to continue. This self-belief must be very strong as it is a protection and insulation from the criticisms and destructive intentions of others. Artists are often misunderstood and labeled as arrogant. But in reality, they are highly sensitive people who need this sense of confidence in order to continue to produce work.

**An artist must have a strong personal drive and dedication to his work.** This is extremely important in order to continue to progress and develop. From a technical point of view, he must work consistently in order to maintain his manual ability and looseness. Many periods will come in his life when money must be found from other sources. His work may not only be a source of income, but it may also become only an expense, as materials must be constantly bought and replaced. A person must be very committed if he wants to prevent his creative fire from being extinguished by the waters of hardship. A great personal drive is also needed to override jealous, competitive, critical, and

destructive people. Again, there is the tendency to interpret monetary success as a reflection of competence and skill. If no money comes in as a result of long hours of work, it could easily appear to be futile and meaningless to continue at something that bears no fruit. But a sincere artist has such a dedication that he can continue at all costs and against all odds. There will often be dry periods in an artist's life. Creativity and inspiration cannot be summoned at will. So when it comes, great care must be taken to protect it. The creative spark is very delicate, and can be overwhelmed by big mundane realities like rent, gas bills, food bills, and demands of others. A strong dedication to work is needed to allow space for this flame and give it a chance to burn brightly.

***Most artists tend to be a little eccentric.*** This means that they tend to be a little different from most people in their behavior. This could be the result of a highly sensitive nature. But this could also be due to the fact that being an artist is a profession that demands an ability to cope with an erratic and irregular lifestyle. Work is often sporadic for an artist. He may get a big commission, or even several at the same time, and then not have any work again for many months. He may spend months preparing for a show where he might sell everything, or nothing. Most artists don't have regular jobs or guaranteed incomes. Not everyone is able to cope with the uncertainty of where the money will come from next. If no work comes, there simply won't be any money. There are no regular paychecks and retirement plans waiting in the future. An artist's future is very uncertain. He may be in demand one day, and suddenly no longer popular or sought after the next. His

monetary worth is left to the fickle public to decide. And in times of economic hardship and recession, it is always in the arts that government funds are first cut. As well, people don't buy art in times of need. Not every person can live day to day or "hand-to-mouth" like this. Of course, there are often cases where an artist may become extremely wealthy and successful in his own lifetime. But one can never foresee the future. All these factors make the artist's life unstable and erratic.

Most people have a tendency to glorify the past. They imagine that it was romantic to live like Gauguin in Tahiti, Toulouse-Lautrec who frequented the Paris dance halls, or Van Gogh who painted passionately at the asylum in Arles. But these people don't really understand the truth or difficulty of such artists' lives. An artist often works under great personal stress and physical hardship. ***In order to be productive, an artist must believe in himself, be dedicated to his work, and be able to cope with an erratic and irregular lifestyle.***

## VOCABULARY REVIEW &amp; SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

|  |
|--|
| What <b>Does It Take to Be an Artist</b> ? |
|--|

**ability** : (n) – power or skill in mental or physical action (ความสามารถ, สติปัญญา, หลักแหลม)

**Ex.-->**

1. He has the **ability** to carry heavy loads.
2. I don't doubt your **ability** to solve the trouble.

**be acquainted with** : (v) – have direct or personal knowledge of (ความรู้, ทำให้คุ้นเคย, วิสาสะ, รู้จัก)

**Ex.-->**

1. I have often heard of Mr. John but I am not **acquainted with** him. (I've not met him or spoken to him.)
2. The men are **acquainted with** aircraft building.

**against** : (prep) not in agreement with; opposed to (ไม่เห็นด้วย, ตรงกันข้าม, ปะทะ, ต่อสู้กับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The soldiers fight **against** the enemy.
2. John is running for president **against** Bob. He is trying to win more votes than Bob.

**ahead** : (adv.) - in front (อยู่หน้า, ข้างหน้า, ขึ้นหน้า, นำหน้า, ล้ำหน้า)

Ex.-->

1. He walked **ahead** of me in the time.
2. Mary was clever so she was soon **ahead** of the other girls in the class.

**ahead of** : (adv.) - **in front; in** advance (ข้างหน้า, นำหน้า, ล้ำหน้า, ก่อน (เวลา))

Ex.-->

1. He walks **ahead of** me in the line.
2. The train arrived **ahead of** time.

**alive** : (adj.) - living; not dead (มีชีวิตอยู่)

Ex.-->

1. Who's the greatest man **alive**?
2. The cat that had fallen into the water was still **alive**. He was saved in time.

**allow** : (v) - to add or take away an *amount* for a special reason (เพื่อให้)

Ex.-->

1. We **allowed** an extra hour to make the trip in case the traffic was heavy.
2. **Allow** enough time for breakfast before you leave.

**around** : (adv., prep) - on every sides; **in** every direction (รอบ ๆ, ล้อม, ที่โน้นที่นี่)

Ex.-->

1. Jack walked **around** the corner.
2. The children ran **around** the school.

**arrive** : (v) - reach a point or a state by effort (มาถึง, ไปถึง)

**Ex.-->**

1. After much discussion, they **arrived** at a decision.
2. **I arrived** at school on time.

**arrogant** : (adj.) - too much confidence (ยะโส, หยิ่ง, ของทวง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The boy was quite **arrogant** because his family was very wealthy.
2. An **arrogant** person does not have any respect for other people their opinions.

**art** : (n) - a thing that requires much practice or skill (สิ่งที่ต้องการการฝึกฝน และทักษะ, วุฒิสามารถ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Playing the piano is an **art**.
2. The art of medicine is sometimes called the healing **art**.

**artist** : (n) - a person who paints or draws pictures (จิตรกร, ช่างเขียน, ศิลปิน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Being an **artist** is not an easy profession.
2. Most **artists** want recognition.



**artistic** : (adj.) - having to do with art or artists (เกี่ยวกับศิลปะ, อย่างศิลปะ)

**Ex.-->**

My brother was **artistic** interests.

**asylum** : (n) ~ a place that takes care of people who are not able to care for themselves (ที่พำนัก, ที่อาศัย, โรงพยาบาลคนบ้า, ร่มโพธิ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. People who are mentally ill may live in an **asylum**.
2. In earlier times, a church was an **asylum** where criminals were safe on arrest.

**auction** : (v) - sell by auction (ขายเลห้ง, ขายทอดตลาด, การประมูล)

**Ex.-->**

1. The furniture was **auctioned** at a good price.
2. When we bought our new house, my parents **auctioned** off some of our old furniture.

**bear** : (v) - produce; yield (ผลิตผล, ให้ (พืชผล, ดอกเบี๋ย))

**Ex.-->**

1. These trees **bear** good apples.
2. Cherry trees **bear** cherries.

**behaviour** : (n) - actions; one way one acts (ความประพฤติ, พฤติการณ์, ปฏิบัติตัว)

**Ex.-->**

1. Mary's **behaviour** is excellent; she is polite.
2. Mary won a prize for good **behaviour** at school.

**being** : (n) - existence; life (มีชีวิตอยู่, ชีวิต, n&v, คงอยู่, เป็นอยู่ในเวลานี้)

**Ex.-->**

1. The town came into **being** about two hundred years ago.
2. A human **being** is a man, woman, or child.

**believe** : (v) have faith, trust, confidence (เชื่อถือ, ไว้วางใจ, ศรัทธา)

**Ex.-->**

1. Many people **believe** there is a God.
2. Jack **believes** in ghosts.

**benefit** : (v) - do good; to be helpful to (เป็นผลดี, เป็นประโยชน์)

**Ex.-->**

1. Rain will **benefit** the farmer's crops.
2. The sea air will **benefit** you.

**bill** : (n) - a notice of money owed for something bought or for work done (บัญชีรายการสิ่งของที่ซื้อ, ใบเสร็จรับเงิน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Mom paid the telephone **bill**.
2. Steve thought that the **bill** for repairs on his bike was too high.

**bought** : (v) - past tense and participle of buy that means get by paying  
**a price** (ซื้อ)

Ex. -->

1. He **bought** that book yesterday.
2. Father has **bought** this house, we own it now.

**bright** : (adj.) - **giving or** sending out light; nor dark or **dull** (ทำให้สว่าง,  
 เปล่งปลั่ง, สดใส)

Ex. -->

1. The leaves on the trees are **bright** green in spring.
2. She was wearing a **bright** red dress.

**brilliant** : (adj.) - very clever, **very bright** (หลักแหลม, สดใส)

Ex. -->

1. We've had a week of **brilliant** sunshine.
2. She was wearing **brilliant** jewels.

**burn** : (v) - **be filled with** strong feeling (จิตใจ) เราร้อน, (หน้า) แดง

Ex. -->

1. They were **burning** to revenge the murder of their leader.
2. Her cheeks were **burning** with shame.

**care** : (n) - serious attention (ระมัดระวัง, เอาใจใส่)

Ex. -->

1. She took good **care** of the baby.
2. She is under a doctor's **care**.

**case** : (n) - an example **of** something (เรื่อง, กรณี, อุบัติการณ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. The forest fire was an obvious **case** of carelessness.
2. The police had no suspects in the **case** of the museum robber.

**chance** : (n) - an opportunity (โอกาส, หนทาง, หนทางสำเร็จ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Jack has a **chance** to pass the test if he studies at home.
2. Grandfather did not have the **chance** to get an education when he was young.

**commission** : (n) - a group **of** persons who are chosen to do certain **work** (หน้าที่ซึ่งได้รับมอบหมายไว้, สัญญาบัตร)

**Ex.-->**

1. The mayor named a **commission** to find out the causes of population in the city.
2. He has received a **commission** is a naval officer.

**commit**: (v) - **give in** trust (มอบหมาย, ส่งให้กรรมการพิจารณา, กระทำ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The boy was **committed** to the care of his aunt.
2. He **committed** a robbery.

**communication** : (n) - **exchange of information, ideas, etc.**  
(การติดต่อสื่อสาร)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Communication** is difficult when people do not speak the same language.
2. We received your **communication**.

**competence** : (n) - ability (ความสามารถ)

**Ex.-->**

Her **competence** as a teacher is known to everyone at the school.

**completely** : (adv.) - thoroughly, perfectly (ตลอดทั่วถึง, เต็มที่, อย่างสมบูรณ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. Anne was **completely** exhausted after skiing all day.
2. Mary's work is **complete** done.

**consistent** : (adj.) - of a person conforming to a regular pattern of style; regular (ไม่เปลี่ยนแปลง, อยู่กับร่องกับรอย)

**Ex.-->**

1. He's been a **consistent** friend to me.
2. The ideas in his various speeches are not **consistent**.

**constantly** : (adv.) - continuously; frequently (บ่อย ๆ, ติดต่อกันตลอดไป)

**Ex.-->**

He is **constantly** being asked for advice.

**continue** : (v) - *go on doing something* (ยังคงทำไปเรื่อย ๆ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **continued** to live with his parents after his marriage.
2. How long shall you **continue** working?

**cope** : (v) - *struggle successfully with* (สู้, รับมือ, จัดการ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The police were scarcely able to **cope** with the crowds.
2. She had trouble **coping** with the extra homework.

**cost** : (n) - *the amount paid* (ราคา, สิ่งที่ต้องเสียไปเพื่อแลกเปลี่ยน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The cost of the hat was high.
2. The father saved his son's life at the **cost** of his own.

**create** : (v) - *to cause something new to exist or happen* (สร้าง, ประดิษฐ์ขึ้น)

**Ex.-->**

1. The lack of rain that summer **created** a shortage of wheat the next winter.
2. An author **creates** characters in his books.

**creative** : (adj.) - *having or showing ability to make something new*  
(ช่างประดิษฐ์, เจ้าความคิด)

**Ex.-->**

A poet must be **creative**.

**creator** : (v) - *one who makes something new* (ผู้ก่อ, ผู้สร้าง, พระผู้เป็นเจ้า)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **creator** is a person who creates.
2. The author is the **creator** of many novels.

**critical** : (adj.) - *tending to complain about another's actions or to judge severely* (วิจารณ์, ตีเตียน, วินิจพิเคราะห์)

**Ex.-->**

1. I do not like people who are too **critical**.
2. She is always **critical** of the way other people dress.

**criticism** : (n) - *a statement about the good or bad points or qualities of something* (คำวิจารณ์, คำติชม, การตีเตียน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Jack was very pleased with the teacher's **criticism** of his composition.
2. Don read with interest the newspaper's **criticism** of the artist's work.

**death** : (n) - *the ending of life; act of dying* (ความตาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. After his **death**, his body was sent home to be buried.
2. Accidents cause many **deaths**.

**dedicate : (v) - give or devote** (อุทิศ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Sometimes a doctor **dedicates** his life to the study of certain diseases he gives his whole life to this study.
2. A good doctor **dedicates** his life to serving others.

**dedication : (n) - a setting apart for or devotion to a special purpose or use** (ทำจารึกในการอุทิศ)

**Ex.-->**

All the teachers, students, and parents were invited to the **dedication** of the new school this Friday afternoon.

**define : (v) - give the meaning of** (แจ้งให้แน่นอน, กำหนด, นิยาม)

**Ex.-->**

1. A dictionary **defines** work.
2. Please listen while I **define** your new duties.

**delicate : (adj.) - requiring careful handling** (บอบบาง, ละเอียดย่อน, กระจุกกระจิก, ปราณิต)

**Ex.-->**

1. The teacher handled the **delicate** problem with understanding.
2. Orchids are **delicate** flower.

**demand : (n) - act of demanding that means require; need** (คำเรียกร้อง, ความต้องการของผู้ซื้อ)

**Ex.-->**



1. He stated his **demand** in a loud noise.
2. The great **demand** for cotton cloth raised the price.

**depend** : (v) - be controlled by (ขึ้นอยู่กับ)

Ex.-->

1. Whether we will go on the trip **depends** on the weather.
2. **Success depends** on hard work and good sense.

**destroy** : (v) - break into pieces (ทำลาย)

Ex.-->

1. Fire **destroyed** his house.
2. The sudden rain **destroyed** our hope of playing cricket.

**destructive** : (adj.) - likely to destroy (ยอมทำลาย, มีผลร้ายกาจ, เป็นอันตราย)

Ex.-->

1. Small children are **destructive**; they like breaking things.
2. Moths are **destructive** to clothes made of wool.

**develop** : (v) - make *or* became larger, better, more knowledgeable  
(ทำให้กว้างขวาง, ขยาย, บุกเบิกให้เป็นประโยชน์ขึ้น, พัฒนา)

Ex.->

1. He **developed** his mind by study.
2. Mary **developed** her love for music by listening to it every day.

**difficulty** : (n) - that which is *not easy to* do or understand, trouble  
(ความยากลำบาก, อุปสรรค)

**Ex.-->**

1. He is in **difficulty** with the law.
2. The main **difficulty** in this problem is understanding the big words.

**drive : (n) - an organized effort by a group of people** (กระตุน, บังคับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. She had a **drive** to raise money for charity.
2. Jack has to **drive** himself to get up on time in the morning.

**due to : (adj.) - caused by** (เพราะ, เพียงแต่, เกิดขึ้นด้วย)

**Ex.-->**

1. The accident was **due** to careless driving.
2. What is the poverty of the farming classes **due to**?

**economic : (adj.) -of or concerned with the management of the money and other resources of a nation, community, etc.**

(ในเรื่องเงิน, ในทางเศรษฐกิจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. An **economic** history is always useful to set up an effective policy.
2. The government's **economic** policy is not quite practical.

**enough : (adj.) - as many or as much as required or desired; sufficient**

(พอเพียง, พอต้องการ, ที่เดียว)

**Ex.-->**

1. We have enough chairs to seat everyone.
2. Is the water not **enough** to make the tea?

**erratic** : (adj.) - (*of a person or his behaviour*) *nor* following ordinary standards (เอาแน่ไม่ได้, ผิด ๆ พลาด, ใช้อยู่กับร่องกับรอย)

**Ex.-->**

An artist must believe in himself, he dedicated to his work, and be able to cope with an **erratic** and irregular lifestyle.

**estate** : (n) - everything owned by a person, including land, money, and other property (ทรัพย์สินสมบัติ, ที่ดิน, กองมรดก)

**Ex.-->**

1. He left a small estate when he died.
2. The rich man lived on a large **estate**.

**even** : (adv.) - yet, still (แม้แต่, ยังคง)

**Ex.-->**

1. He was always friendly, even to strangers.
2. Her grade on the test was even better than this.

**expense** : (n) - the cause of spending (ค่าใช้จ่าย)

**Ex.-->**

1. Food and rent were his chief **expenses**.
2. The **expense** of buying a home did not keep us from buying one.

**extinguish** : (v) – put out (ดับลง, ระวัง, ทำให้หมด)

Ex.-->

1. The fireman **extinguished** the fire in about twenty minutes.
2. At night we **extinguished** the light before going to bed.

**extremely** : (adv.) – very (อย่างยิ่ง, รุนแรง, ผิดธรรมดาอย่างที่สุด)

Ex.-->

1. It is **extremely** warm today.
2. He was **extremely happy** when he won the contest.

**fight** : (n) – battle; use of force to gain victory (การต่อสู้, สู้รบดบมือ)

Ex.-->

1. The **fight** was long and hard.
2. The **fight** against that disease will someday be won.

**form** : (n) – kind; sort; way (ชนิด, ลักษณะ, ทรวดทรง)

Ex.-->

1. Ice and snow are **form** of water.
2. He was given several **forms** to complete.

**frequent** : (v) – visit often (ไปบ่อย ๆ)

Ex.-->

1. The actors **frequent** an eating place near the theater.
2. Bob **frequents** Mary's house.

3. Toulouse-Laytrec *frequented* dance halls.

*fruit* : (n) - the product of any plant, work, or effort, etc. (พืชผล, งาน, พยายาม)

**Ex.-->**

1. The worker grew rich from the *fruits* of his labor.
2. *Fruits* are often good to eat.

*frustrate* : (v) - to discourage or prevent (ทำให้ไม่สมหวัง, ก่อกวน, ทำลาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. Joe was *frustrated* by his bad luck in trying to find a summer job.
2. The rainy weather threatened to *frustrate* our plans for a camping trip.

*fund* : (n) - a sum of money set aside for a special purpose, money (ทุน, กองทุน, มูลนิธิ, เงิน)

**Ex.-->**

1. That *fund* pays the medical expenses of the poor people.
2. College students often write home for *funds*.

*futility* : (n) - uselessness or worthlessness; emptiness or ineffectiveness (หาประโยชน์ไม่ได้, ปราศจากเหตุผล)

**Ex.-->**

1. The creator can easily feel a sense of *futility*.
2. He wasted his time in *futile* talk.

**gain** : (v) - *obtain or add as an increase* (ได้มา)

**Ex.-->**

1. Her kindness **gained** her many friends.
2. He **gained** weight.

**glorify** : (v) - *worship; praise* (ยกย่องว่าประเสริฐ, สรรเสริญ)

**Ex.-->**

Most people have a tendency to **glorify** the past.

**government** : (n) - *the group of person selected* (รัฐบาล, การปกครอง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **government** runs the health service.
2. The **government** of Great Britain is a democracy.

**great** : (adj.) - *extreme; much more than usual* (สำคัญ, ใหญ่)

**Ex.-->**

1. He is a **great** friend of mine.
2. Thomas Edison was a **great** inventor.

**guaranteed** : (adj.) - *promise with certainty* (รับประกัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Most artists don't have **guaranteed** incomes.
2. This food is **guaranteed** additive-free.

**hall** : (n) - a large room or building for public meetings (ห้องโถง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The lecture was held in the town **hall**.
2. The lecture was given in the school **hall**.

**hardship** (n) - anything that causes suffering, such as hunger or pain  
(ความยากลำบาก)

**Ex.-->**

1. Not having enough water **was** a **hardship**.
2. Hunger is **a hardship**.

**imagine** : (v) - think, suppose, or guess (คิด, นึกดูเอาเอง, เต้า, จินตนาการ)

**Ex.-->**

1. I **imagine you** are tired after your trip.
2. He tried to **imagine** life abroad.

**important** : (adj.) - having great meaning or value (ความหมาย, ความสำคัญ)

**Ex.-->**

1. It **was** an **important date**.
2. The headmaster is an **important** person in our town.

**income** : (n) - money received as salary (รายได้, เงินได้)

**Ex.-->**

1. He has a very high **income**.
2. Father's **income** is 500,000 bath a year.

**in fact** : – really; as a matter of fact; in point of fact (แท้จริง, อันที่จริง)

**Ex.-->**

They say that I am rich, but **in fact**, they have more money than I do.

**inspiration** : (n) – a deep and strong desire to do something  
(ดลใจ, ดลบันดาล)

**Ex.-->**

1. Sally had an **inspiration** to write a poem.
2. Mary's music teacher is her **inspiration**. She makes Mary want to play well.
3. "Talent is 10 *inspiration* and 90 perspiration." –proverb.

**in spite of** : – regardless of (แม้, ทั้ง ๆ ที่)

**Ex.-->**

**In spite of** great financial difficulties, he managed to get the company on a profit making basis.

**insulate** : (v) – to cover or surround with a material that slows or stops the flow of electricity, heat, or sound (กั้น, ป้องกัน (กระแสไฟฟ้า, ความร้อน, เสียง))

**Ex.->**

1. The electricity **insulated** the electric wire with rubber.
2. Our house is **insulated** so that it keeps warm inside in winter.



**intention** : (n) – purpose; plan (ตั้งใจ, มุ่งหมาย, เจตนา)

Ex.-->

1. It was his **intention** to invite her to dinner.
2. Bob accidentally broke a glass. It was not his **intention** to break it.

**involved** : (v) – include (นำเข้าไปพัวพัน, ก่อให้เกิด)

Ex.-->

1. Three cars were **involved** in the accident.
2. His work **involves** a great deal of travel.

**irregular** : (adj.) – not having a regular or even shape, arrangement, or order (ไม่สม่ำเสมอ, ไม่ถูกต้องตามระเบียบ, ผิดปกติ)

Ex.-->

1. Train schedules were **irregular** during the flood.
2. The sick man's heartbeat was **irregular**.

**jealous** : (adj.) – feeling unhappy and angry towards someone who has something which you believe you should have (ริษยา, อิจฉา)

Ex.-->

1. Mary is **jealous** of baby.
2. He was **jealous** of his neighbour's good fortune.

**label** : (v) – put a label on (ติดป้าย, ตราหน้า)

– a piece of paper, card, cloth, wood, or other material  
fastened to an object (ฉลาก)

**Ex.->**

1. The bottle is **labeled** “poison”.
2. He was **labeled** a “thief” because of youthful mistakes.

**left** : (v) – past tense and participle of leave that means let remain in a particular condition (ตั้งค้างไว้, ปล่อย)

**Ex.->**

1. **Leave** the window open at night.
2. He **left** a note on his friend’s desk.

**lifetime** : (n) – the length of time that a person lives (ระหว่างที่ยังมีชีวิตอยู่, ชีวิต, ตลอดชีวิต)

**Ex.-->**

1. The chance of a **lifetime**.
2. The **lifetime** of a television set is about ten years.

**listen** : (v) – give one’s attention to (ฟัง)

**Ex.-->**

1. You must **listen** to your teacher.
2. They **listened** to the radio.

**lost** : (v) ~ *past tense and participle of lose that means not be able to find* (ทำหาย, สูญ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **lost** his coat yesterday.
2. Nancy **lost** her gloves.

**maintain** : (v) ~ *keep; preserve; continue* (รักษา, ดำเนิน, ให้มีไปเรื่อย ๆ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **maintained** a steady speed on the highway.
2. His salary was too small to **maintain** a family of five.

**manual** : (adj.) - *a book that give instructions or information about something* (สมุดคู่มือ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Rob had to study the driver's **manual** before he took the test to get his driver's license.
2. **Manual** training is required to read by all trainees.

**mass** : (n) ~ *greater number or majority* (ทั้งมวล, ส่วนใหญ่, มากมาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **mass** of people voted for a new park.
2. The great **mass** of the people elected him President.

**material** : (n) *the substance; or matter of which something is made or from which something can be made* (วัตถุ, เครื่องใช้, เครื่องสำหรับประกอบ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Cement is the *material* used to lay bricks.
2. Mary's dress is made of very fine *material*.

**meaningless : (adj.) - without meaning or motive** (ไม่มีความหมาย)

**Ex.-->**

If no money comes in as a result of long hours of work, it could easily appear to be futile and *meaningless* to continue at something that bears no fruit.

**mental : (adj.) - of or concerning the mind** (ความคิด)

**Ex.->**

1. He had great *mental* ability.
2. Bill is physically stronger than Jack, but Jack has better *mental* powers. Jack thinks faster and more clearly.

**misunderstood : (v) - understand wrongly** (เข้าใจผิด)

**Ex.-->**

1. His intentions were *misunderstood*.
2. We *misunderstood* the policemen's directions and got lost.

**monetary: (adj.) - having to do with money or currency** (เกี่ยวกับเงินทอง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **monetary** unit in the United States is the dollar.
2. The government's *monetary* policy is much improved.

**mundane** : (adj.) - worldly (เกี่ยวกับโลกมนุษย์)

**Ex.-->**

When a man is near death he loses interest in *mundane* affairs.

**nature** : (n) - temper (อารมณ์, นิสัย, ธรรมชาติ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Ned has a gentle **nature**.
2. Tom has a kindly **nature**.

**number** : (n) - a quantity; total (จำนวน)

**Ex.-->**

1. A large **number** of books lay on the desk.
2. A **number** of children were playing in the yard.

**odds** : (n) - the difference in favor *of or* against something being true or happening (ประหลาด, ชอบกล)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **odds** are ten to one against that horse's winning the race.
2. The **odds** are in favor of his being elected class president.

**opinion** : (n) - a belief or way of thinking (ความคิดเห็น)

**Ex.-->**

1. In my **opinion**, he will win the race.
2. What is your **opinion** of that movie?

**other** : (pron.) - *the other one, an additional person or thing* (คนอื่น ๆ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Two children went, and the **others** stayed home.
2. Each blames the **other**.

**override** : (v) - *set aside without consideration; disregard the wishes of others* (ผ่านข้าม)

**Ex.-->**

Congress may **override** the President's veto.

**overwhelm** : (v) - *to overcome completely* (มีชัยอย่างสิ้นเหลือ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The enemy soldiers **overwhelmed** our men.
2. The attackers **overwhelmed** the village.

**own** : (v) - *to have as belonging to one; possess* (เป็นเจ้าของ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The farmer **owns** all the land between here and the river.
2. The suspect **owned** up to the robbery.

**paint** : (n) - *a kind of colouring mixture that can be spread on a surface to colour and, sometimes, to protect it* (สีสำหรับทาหรือเขียน)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Paint** is liquid when it is put on, and dries hard.
2. **Paint** is spread on a surface to color it or protect it.

**paint** : (v) - to make a picture or **design of something by using paint**

(ทาสี)

Ex.-->

1. This artist was famous for **painting** mountain scenes.
2. The reporter **painted** a sad picture of the city's slums in his articles.

**painting** : (n) - a picture made with liquid colors (ภาพเขียน)

Ex.-->

1. A **painting** of the family's two children hung over the sofa.
2. We saw many **paintings** and drawings in the art museum.

**particular** : (adj.) - concerning **one single** person, **thing, etc.; specific**

(เฉพาะเป็นพิเศษ)

Ex.-->

1. The **particular** chair belongs to my father.
2. There is one **particular** point I must warn you about.

**patient** : (adj.) ~ **show** self-control and tenderness (อดทน)

Ex.-->

1. He was **patient** with the children.
2. Our teacher is **very patient** with us when we ask questions.

**perhaps** : (adv.) - maybe, possible (บางที)

Ex.-->

1. **Perhaps** brother will be home early today.

2. **Perhaps** the letter will come today.

**period : (n) - a division of time** (ระยะเวลา, ตามเวลา)

Ex.-->

1. We have reading during the first **period** at school.
2. During the early **period** of her life, she lives abroad.

**personal : (adj.) - private, not public** (ส่วนตัว)

Ex.-->

1. My diary is **personal**, and other people should not read it without permission.
2. Jean made a **persona**/ request to the teacher. She spoke to the teacher herself.

**personality : (n) - a person's ways and manners** (บุคลิกลักษณะ)

Ex.-->

1. Mary has a charming **personality**. People like her.
2. A person's **personality** makes him or her different from everybody else.

**physical : (adj.) - of the body** (ในทางกาย, กายภาพ)

Ex.-->

1. The doctor's examination showed he was in excellent **physical** condition.



2. The doctor's gave the children's physical examination. He examined their bodies.

**plan** : (n) *a way of doing something that has been thought out ahead of time* (แผนการ)

Ex.-->

1. Do you have any **plans** for this weekend?
2. The generals had a **plan** of attack.

**point of view** : (n) *a way of thinking about something, attitude* (ความคิดเห็น)

Ex.-->

1. From my **point of** view, hockey is a more exciting game to watch than football.
2. I like what she bought, but from her husband's **point of view** it was expensive.

**popular** : (adj.) - *pleasing to very many people* (เป็นที่นิยมของประชาชน)

Ex.-->

1. Baseball is a **popular** sport.
2. The beach is a **popular** place to go on summer afternoons.

**possess** : (v) - *have or own* (เป็นเจ้าของ, ครอบครอง)

Ex.-->

1. Johnny **possesses** a good singing voice.
2. That man **possesses** great wealth.

**poverty : (n) - condition of being poor; lack of money, food, clothing etc.** (ความยากจน, ความไม่สมบูรณ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. That family lives in **poverty**.
2. The **poverty** of the soil caused the farmer to give up his farm.

**prepare : (v) - to make or get ready** (ตระเตรียม)

**Ex.-->**

1. Bill **prepared** himself for the game by practicing.
2. We will **prepare** lunch.

**produce : (v) - to make or create something** (ผลิต)

**Ex.-->**

1. That factory **produces** automobiles.
2. A cow **produces** milk.

**profession : (n) - an occupation that requires special education and training** (อาชีพ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Law and medicine are two **professions** that require years of education.
2. He is preparing for the teaching **profession**.

**protection : (n) - the keeping of someone or something from harm**  
(การอนุรักษ์, การป้องกัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Our state has game preserves for the **protection** of wild animals.
2. A raincoat is a **protection** against rain.

**public : (n) - having to do with or for all the people** (สาธารณะ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The mayor made a **public** announcement that he was retiring from office.
2. A **public** beach is for anybody to use.

**realize : (v) - to understand completely** (ตระหนักถึง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Chris didn't **realize** how late it was because his watch had stopped.
2. Years of practice helped Mike to **realize** his dream of becoming baseball player.

**really : (adv.) - actually, in fact** (จริง ๆ, แท้จริง)

**Ex.-->**

1. If you **really** want something, you will work for it.
2. The sun does not **really** go round the earth. The earth goes round the sun.

**reason : (n) - a statement that explains something** (เหตุผล)

**Ex.->**

1. Bob could get no **reason** for being late.
2. I wonder what **reason** he had for getting so angry.

**recess** : (v) - short period of rest from work or study (การหยุดพัก)

**recession** : (n) - the act of receding or going (back) (การลด, การสอบ)

**Ex.-->**

1. During the **recess**, the children played in the school yard.
2. He played baseball during **recess** at school.

**recognition** : (n) - an accepting of something as being true, right or valid (รู้จัก, สำนึก)

**Ex.-->**

1. The young man demanded **recognition** of his rights as a citizen.
2. The books were burned beyond **recognition**.

**record** : (n) - a written account of something (สถิติ, บันทึก)

**Ex.-->**

1. The school keeps a **record** of the number of days each student is absent.
2. They kept a **record** of their expenses.

**regular** : (adj.) - unchanging; usual; normal (ประจำ, สมำเสมอ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He has no **regular** work.

2. Six o'clock is our *regular* dinner time.

**rejection** : (n) - *refuse to take* (ปฏิเสธ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The teacher *rejected* Bill's paper because it wasn't need.
2. The judges **rejected** the prisoner's plea for pardon.

**relate** : (v) - *to tell the story of* (เล่า, บรรยาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. The witness **related** what he had seen.
2. The teacher **related** his improved grades to better study habits.

**rent** : (n) - payment regularly made to an owner for the *use of* land, a building, *or* other property (ประเมินค่าเช่า)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **rent** for the house was more than they could afford.
2. My father pays the **rent** for our apartment every month.

**replace** : (v) - *to got or give something that takes the place of something else* (แทนที่)

**Ex.-->**

1. We bought a new pane for the window to **replace** the one that had been broken.
2. Mother **replaced** the broken window.

**retire** : (v) – leave one's job because of age or poor health, go to bed  
(พักการทำงาน)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **retired** from his job several years ago.
2. She did not **retire** until midnight.

**retirement** : (n) – the act of retiring or the state of being retired  
(ปลดเกษียณ)

**Ex.-->**

He took up gardening after his **retirement** from business.

**risk** : (n) – the possibility of loss, damage, injury; danger (เสี่ยงภัย,  
อันตราย)

**Ex.-->**

1. There are some **risks** in every adventure.
2. Do not **risk** crossing the road in front of a moving car.

**romantic** : (adj.) – not practical; tending to dream (เพื่อฝัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. My older sister likes to read **romantic** novels.
2. She is **a** very **romantic** person.

**sense** : (n) – a feeling (ความรู้สึก)

**Ex.-->**

1. She had a **sense** of failure after losing the race.
2. Greg has a good **sense** of humor.

**sensitive** : (adj.) - having deep feeling; very aware (มีความรู้สึกอ่อนไหว)

**Ex.-->**

1. A poet must be a *sensitive* person.
2. She was so *sensitive* that she cried when the teacher corrected her.

**several** : (adj.) - more *than two*, but *not many* (หลาย ๆ)

**Ex.-->**

1. They played baseball for *several* hours.
2. I ate several cookies.

**sincere** : (adj.) - real; genuine (จริงใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. She made a *sincere* effort to improve.
2. He was a *sincere* friend.

**skill** : (v) - *the power* or ability to do something (ทักษะความชำนาญ)

**Ex.->**

1. *Skill* comes from practice, study, or experience.
2. My mother works with children who have poor reading *skills*.

**source** : (n) a person, *place*, or *thing* that provides something or from which something comes (แหล่งที่มา)

**Ex.-->**

1. This region is an important *source* of coal.
2. Farms are the *source* of most of our food.

**space : (n) - a period of time** (ระยะเวลา)

**Ex.-->**

A *space* of three years is not enough to recover the economic stability.

**sporadic : (adj.) - occurring at regular intervals; occurring in single cases** (นาน 7 ครั้ง, เป็นระยะ ๆ)

**Ex.-->**

Mark is often *sporadic* for an artist.

**strong : (adj.) - firm** (มั่นคง, แข็งแรง)

**Ex.->**

1. The house has *strong* walls.
2. She is *strong* in her beliefs.

**success : (n) - a result that has been hoped for** (ผลสำเร็จ)

**Ex.->**

1. He met great success in his work.
2. The party was a big success.

**successful : (adj.) - having success** (ประสบผลสำเร็จ)

**Ex:->**



1. The writer's book was **successful** and sold many copies.
2. My aunt is a **successful** lawyer.

**such** : (adj.) - of the same kind as; similar to (เช่นนี้)

Ex.-->

1. A painting **such** as this is very expensive.
2. Mother bought tomatoes, lettuce, and other **such** vegetables for a salad.

**summon** : (v) - request to come, arouse; to stir up (รวบรวมความกล้า)

Ex.-->

1. She **summoned** up her courage and dove off the high diving board.
2. He was **summoned** to appear in court.

**survive** : (v) - remain alive despite something (รอดชีวิต)

Ex.->

1. A few people **survived** the flood.
2. Few of the old customs **survived** the war.

**tend** : (v) - to lead to or be directed to (โอนเอียง, มักชอบ)

Ex.-->

1. Unclean living conditions **tend** to produce disease.
2. The road **tends** to the left just ahead.

**tendency** : (**n**) - a natural or usual **tendency** or in **or** inclination  
(ความโน้มเอียง, มีนิสัยของ)

Ex.-->

1. My brother has a **tendency** to get angry if he is criticized.
2. She is a **tendency** to talk too much.

**therein** : (**adv.**) - **in or** into that **place** (ในที่นั้น, ในนั้น)

Ex.-->

1. He was willed the house and all the furniture **therein**.
2. He answered her letter, and **therein** he made his mistake.

**totally** : (**adv.**) - completely, entirely (รวมทั้งหมด)

Ex.-->

1. It was **totally** dark by the time we got home.
2. One of my students is **totally** blind.

**turmoil** : (**n**) - **confusion; agitation** (ความยุ่งยาก)

Ex.-->

1. The country will confront the great **turmoil** of dismissal.
2. Many bank employees were in **turmoil** because of the bank collapse.

**unfortunate** : (**adj.**) - **unlucky, unsuccessful** (โชคร้าย, ไม่ประสบผลสำเร็จ)

Ex.-->

1. The lady is a very **unfortunate** person. She lost her new watch.
2. An **unfortunate** remark made us greatly disappointed.

**wealth** : (n) - having rich (ความมั่งคั่ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. She comes from a **wealthy** family.
2. "Wealthy makes wit waver".

**whether** : (conj.) - jointing two or more choices or possibilities and meanings, one or the other (หรือไม่)

**Ex.-->**

1. She is calling to find out **whether** or not you are falling better.
2. He could not decide **whether** to go or stay.

**willing** : (adj.) - ready or eager to help or to do what is needed (เต็มใจ, ตั้งใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **willing** worker is needed.
2. He's quite **willing** to pay the price I asked.

**yet** : (conj.) - however; nevertheless (แต่)

**Ex.-->**

She tries hard, **yet** she does not understand.

**ASSIGNMENT 14**

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. ***“What Is a True Friend ?”***

***It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition. Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***

# The Jotted Outline

## *What Is a True Friend ?*

### **1. Thesis**

*A friend is one who feels deep affection for another. This affection is shown in the following ways: He is sincere, he doesn't compete with you, and he is available.*

### **II. Sincere**

- feels genuine warmth
- no ulterior motivation
- friendship based on mutual respect
- honest opinions can be given
- a strong friendship won't break
- someone to burst
- mutual devotion

### **III. No Competition**

- feels joy in another's success (no jealousy)

- not threatened by you (no need to compete)
- helps when you are down
- criticism done with consideration for feelings
- won't drop you
- mutual warmth necessary

#### ***IV. Available in Times of Need.***

- emotional and physical needs
- won't turn you away
- will inconvenience himself
- supports you in hard times
- always tries to help
- helps with money and physical needs

#### ***V. Conclusion***

***A true friend is sincere, not competitive, and available. He is someone of great value.***

**What Is a True Friend ?**

The word “friend” is very widely used. In fact, too widely used. It is used to describe a range of people, from the loose relationships formed with those at work or at home, to people known well for many years. But there is a big gap between these people. The loose relationships could better be called acquaintances, while the word “friend” could be kept to describe a few special people. A dictionary definition of friend is “one who feels calm, quiet, deep enduring affection for another.” ***And a true friend will show this affection in the following ways: he is sincere, he doesn’t compete with you, and he is available in times of need.***

***A true friend is sincere.*** That means he holds genuine warmth for you. He doesn’t seek your friendship with some ulterior motivation or for some personal gain. Your friendship should be founded on a mutual respect and esteem and there should be honesty between you and the other person. A friend gives his honest opinion when asked for it and if the friendship is strong enough, the truth won’t shake it. Flattery is unnecessary. He is someone you can trust with your secrets, your feelings, and often even your possessions. In a good friendship there is a sense of mutual devotion or concern for each other’s well-being. A true friend is not someone you would want to hurt or would ever want to see hurt by others.

If someone feels happiness for another's progress and success, then the happiness is called sympathetic joy. ***If the friendship is true, then there are no feelings of jealousy.*** A friend doesn't compete with you. He isn't threatened and doesn't feel a need to do better than you. He will never laugh when you are down or depressed, but will offer sympathy. If he has a criticism or a judgment to make it will be done with a deep affection and consideration for the other's feelings. He won't leave you or drop you at this convenience. But there must be mutual warmth and devotion. If there is hostility or coldness from one side. There can be no friendship.

***A true friend is someone who is available in times of need.*** And this means all needs, emotional and physical. If you go to him for help, he won't turn you away. He will go out of his way for you even at a great personal inconvenience. A fair weather friend is someone who leaves you when things go wrong. A true friend stays with you and supports you in rough times. He would often put his own pleasures aside for the relationship. He'll always try, as much as possible, to help. And he's always someone you can turn to or lean on when there's a problem with money or housing.

It has been written that we should ***"make new friends but keep the old. One is silver and the other is gold."*** Deep friendship often evolves over many years. ***A true friend is sincere, not competitive, and available. He is someone of great value and should be treated as such.***



## VOCABULARY REVIEW & SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

### What Is a True Friend ?

**affection:** (n) - a feeling of love (ความพอใจ, ความรักใคร่)

Ex.-->

1. When you fell **affection** for people, you like them very much and care about what happen to them.
2. He had a deep **affection** for his sister and brother.

**available :** (adj.) - ready for use or service (หาได้, เท่าที่จะหาได้)

Ex.-->

1. Use every **available** namely to save the child.
2. There are still a few seats **available** for the game.

**calm:** (adj.) - peaceful; quiet; undisturbed by passion or emotion; not excited (สงบ, เงียบ)

Ex.-->

1. She spoke in a **calm** voice.
2. The people in the building stayed **calm** during the fire and got out safely.

**compete:** (v) - to try, to win or gain something from another or others (แข่งขัน)

Ex.-->

1. The two girls **competed** against each other for first prize in the spelling contest.
2. The three men **competed** for the prize.

**concern:** (n) – something that is important to a person (ผู้ที่เกี่ยวข้อง)  
 – worried; interest (กังวล, สนใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Taking care of the puppy is my **concern**.
2. He was full of **concern** for his sick brother.

**consideration:** (n) – thoughtfulness for other people and their feelings  
 (คำนึงถึง, เคารพ)

**Ex.-->**

Tom shows **consideration** for the neighbors by not playing the record player too loudly.

**convenience:** (n) – ease and comfort (เครื่องให้ความสะดวก, สิ่งอำนวยความสะดวก)

**Ex.-->**

1. The boys liked the **convenience** of canned foods when they went camping.
2. A car is a great **convenience**.

**criticism:** (n) – the act of saying what is good or bad about something;  
 disapproval (คำวิจารณ์, คำติชม)

**Ex.-->**

1. Her brother's criticism of the way she dressed made her angry.
2. Jack was very pleased with the teacher's **criticism** of his composition.

**definition:** (n) - an explanation of the meaning of a work or group of words (คำจำกัดความ)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **definition** for the word family is "a father," "mother," and "their children".
2. Dictionary for children has many definitions in it.

**depress:** (v) - to make sad or gloomy (ไม่เบิกบาน, ทำให้ท้อเหี่ยวใจ )

**Ex.-->**

1. The sad story depressed me, so I felt unhappy about things after reading it.
2. The death of their dog **depressed** the whole family.

**describe:** (v) - to give a picture of something in words; tell or write about (อธิบาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. Can you **describe** the man you saw at the window?
2. He **described** his sister to me.

**devotion:** (n) - a strong affection; loyalty; faithfulness great love (ซื่อสัตย์)  
- devoting or being devoted (สละ, อุทิศเวลา)

1. He felt great **devotion** to his parents.
2. Father's **devotion** to his family is one reason why he stays at home every evening.

**emotional:** (adj.) - having to **do with the** emotion **or** feelings **a person has; easily moved by emotion** (ความรู้สึกดีใจ, โกรธ, รัก, ขุนเฉียวง่าย, ร้องไห้ง่าย, ดีใจง่าย )

**Ex.-->**

1. **Emotional** problems kept him from doing as good a job as he usually does.
2. My aunt is an **emotional** person who always cries during sad movies.

**esteem:** (n) - **high respect and admiration,**

(v) - value greatly, consider highly, to think highly of  
(ความนิยม, ความนับถือ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Everyone in town had great **esteem** for the judge's honesty.
2. The captain's men **esteemed** him for his bravery.

**evolve:** (v) - to develop or grow gradually (วิวัฒนาการ, ความเจริญ, ค่อยเป็นค่อยไป)

**Ex.-->**

1. Elephants **evolved** from huge animals called mammoths that lived during the time that dinosaurs were alive.

2. Their plan evolved by trial and error.

**flatter:** (v) - to praise too much or insincerely (ยกยอ, ประจบประแจง, ทำให้ภูมิใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He **flattered** her by saying that she was the most beautiful girl in the world.
2. Sometimes grandfather **flatters** me.

**friendship:** (n) - the warm feeling between friends (มิตรภาพ, ความเป็นมิตร)

**Ex.-->**

1. The two boys' **friendship** started when they used to play baseball together.
2. Bob and John are friends. Their **friendship** started when they were in kindergarten.

**genuine:** (adj.) - true (แท้จริง)  
 - honest (ซื่อสัตย์)  
 - sincere (จริงใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Bob's friendship is **genuine**.
2. She made a **genuine** effort to help us.

**honest, honesty:** (adj., n) - telling the truth, not cheating truthfulness (ซื่อสัตย์, สุจริต)

**Ex.-->**

1. Lincoln was an honest man.
2. He answered all the questions with *honesty*.

**hostile: (adj.) - feeling and showing hatred or dislike; not friendly**

(เป็นศัตรูกัน,เกลียดชัง)

**Ex.-->**

1. After their fight, the boys wouldn't talk to each other for a week, and just gave each other *hostile* looks.
2. The student was *hostile* to the teacher.

**hurt: (v) - to cause pain or injury** (ทำให้บาดเจ็บ, เจ็บปวด)

**(n) - pain or injury**

**Ex.-->**

1. She *hurt* his feelings when she laughed at him.
2. Betty had *hurt* her knee where she scrapped it.
3. It was a severe *hurt* to her pride.

**jealous: (adj.) - having envy of a person, or what a person has or can**

**do** (อิจฉา, ริษยา, ไม่ชอบเห็นใครดีกว่าตนเอง)

**Ex.-->**

She was *jealous* of his friend's ability to play football so well.

**jealousy: (n) - envy; a jealous feeling** (อิจฉา, ริษยา)

**Ex.-->**

There is often *jealousy* between brothers and sisters.

**judgment:** (n) - the ability to decide or judge wisely; good sense  
(การพิจารณา, การตัดสินใจ, การลงความเห็นอย่างรอบคอบ)

**Ex.-->**

1. In my **judgment**, Michael is very good at drawing and painting.
2. My brother has good **judgment** in handling money matters.

**leave** : (v) - to go from one place to another place; go away (ออกเดินทาง, ออกจาก, ออก)

**Ex.-->**

1. She has to **leave** and go home.
2. The plane **leaves** at six o'clock.

**mutual** : (adj.) - done **or** felt together; shared (ทั้งสองฝ่าย, ซึ่งกันและกัน, ร่วมกัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The two men had a **mutual** dislike for each other.
2. Your friendship should be founded on a **mutual** respect.

**opinion** : (n) - a belief that based on what **a** person thinks rather than on what is proved **or** known to be true (ความคิดเห็น)

**Ex.-->**

1. It is my **opinion** that he will win the race.
2. What is your **opinion** of that movie?

**pleasure : (n) - a feeling of delight and happiness** (ความพอใจ,  
ความเพลิดเพลิน, ความยินดี)

**Ex.-->**

1. The circus clowns gave **pleasure** to the children in the audience.
2. It is a **pleasure** to see you again.

**possession : (n) - the owning of something** (ความเป็นเจ้าของ, สมบัติ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The family lost all their **possessions** in the fire.
2. The two men thought for **possession** of the gold.

**progress : (n) - development; betterment; forward movement**  
(ดำเนินต่อไป, ก้าวหน้า, เจริญขึ้น)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **progress** of the students in their reading ability is remarkable.

(v) - **proceed; move forward** (ดำเนินต่อไป, เพิ่มขึ้น)

2. The building of the new house **progressed** rapidly.

**range : (n, v) - the limit or reach of something; the greatest distance to which anything, such as sound, a moving object, ect.**  
(ขอบเขต, มีระยะ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Everyone within **range** of his voice heard the remark and laughed.



2. The children **ranged** in age from three to ten years old.

**relationship** : (n) - the state of being related; connection (ความเกี่ยวเนื่อง, ความเกี่ยวข้อง)

**Ex.-->**

1. We have great **relationship** between the number of times the actors rehearsed the play and how well they performed it.
2. We would often put our own pleasures aside for the **relationship**.

**respect** : (n) - regard; admiration and honor (เคารพนับถือ, ยำเกรง, สรรเสริญ, เลื่อมใส)

**Ex.-->**

1. We have great **respect** for your opinion.
- : (v) - to have and show honor or consideration for
2. We **respect** his honest; she respected my privacy and didn't bother me while I was working.

**rough**: (adj.) - hard or unpleasant (ยากลำบาก, สมบุกสมบัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. She had a **rough** day at work because her assistant was sick.
2. Grandmother had a **rough** life when he was a boy.

**secret** : (n) - something secret; a hidden reason or cause (ความลับ, การซ่อนเร้น, การปกปิด)

**Ex.-->**

1. He told her a **secret**.
2. Hard work is the **secret** of her success.  
: (adj.) - **known only to oneself or a few hidden**.
3. The private buried his treasure in a **secret** place.
4. He kept some money in a **secret** place.

**seek : (v) - to try to find; go to search of; ask for** (ค้นคว้า, ค้นหา, ขอ,  
ต้องการ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The police were seeking a stolen car.
2. Every candidate in the election will **seek** to win.

**shake : (v) - to tremble or cause to tremble; to weaken; to upset** (เขย่า,  
สั่น, ทำให้สั่นไหว, กระทบกระเทือน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The terrible news has **shaken** us all.
2. The icy wind made him **shake** with cold.

**sincere : (adj.) - showing good faith; real** (จริงใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He was a **sincere** friend.
2. She made a **sincere** effort to improve.

**special : (adj.) - different from others in a certain way; not ordinary;  
unusual** (เน้นพิเศษ, เฉพาะเจาะจง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Jack has a special interest in hockey.
2. My birthday is a **special** day to me.

**success** : (n) - a result that has been hoped for; doing well (ความสำเร็จ, มีชื่อเสียง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The young man had much **success** as a writer.
2. He met with great **success** in his work.

**support** : (v) - to hold up; to provide for (รับ, พุง, ค้ำจุน, สนับสนุน, เลี้ยงดู)

**Ex.-->**

1. These book shelves can **support** heavy books.
2. Jane's mother **supports** her family by working in a bank.

**sympathetic** : (adj.) - feeling or showing kindness and pity toward others (รู้สึกเห็นอกเห็นใจ, สงสารผู้อื่น)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **sympathetic** person shares and understands the sorrow or trouble of others.
2. A **sympathetic** neighbor brought flowers to the sick woman.

**sympathy** : (n) - the ability to share and understand the sorrow or trouble of others (ความเห็นอกเห็นใจ, ความสงสาร)

**Ex.-->**

1. Jim had **sympathy** for the hurt dog.

2. Everyone left **sympathy** for the people who had lost their homes in the flood.

**threaten** : (v) - to say what will be done; to hurt or punish; make a threat of or against (ข่มขู่, ใช้คำขู่, ทำให้กลัว)

Ex.-->

1. The robber **threatened** the bank teller's life if she didn't hand over the money he wanted.
2. The shop owner **threatened** to call the police if the man didn't leave his store.

**treat** : (v) - handle, regard, or act toward in a certain way (ปฏิบัติ, วิธีปฏิบัติ, ทำกับ, ปฏิบัติกับ)

Ex.-->

1. He **treated** the old man with respect.
- : (n) - something that is a special pleasure (สิ่งใด ๆ ที่ดีเลิศ)
2. Going to the circus was a **treat** for all of us.

**true** : (adj.) - agreeing with the facts; not false, wrong, or made up (แท้จริง, ด้วยความจริง)

Ex.-->

1. The movie was based on a **true** story.
2. Everything he said was **true**; he didn't lie.

**trust** : (v) – to believe or have confidence in (เชื่อถือ, ไว้วางใจ)

**Ex.**-->

1. We should not have **trusted** the weather report.

**2.** I **trust** her to keep a secret.

**truth** : (n) – something that is true (ความจริง, แท้จริง, ตรง)

**Ex.**-->

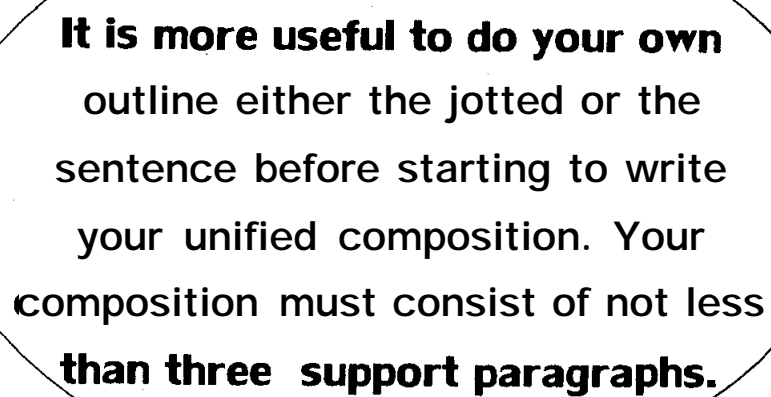
1. May taught her children to tell the **truth**.

2. It would not be telling the **truth** to say that the children are perfect.

---

**ASSIGNMENT 15**

**Directions :** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. **“What Makes a Person Popular”**



**It is more useful to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition. Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.**

# The Jotted Outline

## What Makes a Person Popular

### 1. Thesis

*If you look at the characteristics of a popular person, you will see that such a person is sociable, successful, and possesses leadership qualities.*

### II. Sociable

- not reclusive
- cultivate many relationships
- magnetic personalities
  - likes to be with others
- likes parties
- likes to make others laugh
- positive and enthusiastic
- “as you sow, so shall you reap” meaning, here, that you get, what you give

### III. Successful

- success in many areas of life
- strong personalities
- “winners” not “losers”. People like to identify with a winner

- ~ people sometimes act, and dress **as** if successful to become or stay popular
- confident, and secure
- not afraid to be individualistic
- personality exudes confidence and security
- people are drawn into this atmosphere

#### IV. Possess leadership qualities

- ~ popular people possess leadership qualities
- interesting, and have ideas and opinions on many subjects
- not shy
- does not talkers
- show initiative and organizational abilities
- dynamic (take chances)
- can make decisions
- independent, (don't drain others)
- decisive but also flexible
- models for others to imitate (people took up to strong characters)

#### V. Conclusion

Most popular **people** tend to be sociable, successful, and **possess** leadership qualities.



***What Makes a Person Popular***

Do you remember your school days? If you think about them, you'll probably remember a few special people who always had many friends and never had to spend a lonely evening at home. These people were popular. But actually, deep inside, most people like to be liked by, and popular with, their fellow men, even if they won't admit it. What makes a person popular? ***If you look at the characteristics of a popular person, you 'll see that such a person is sociable, successful, and possesses leadership qualities.***

***Popular people are usually very sociable.*** They have the opposite of reclusive personalities and tend to cultivate many relationships with many people. Sometimes it is said that certain people have magnetic personalities. This means that there is something about these people that seems to draw others to them. Sociable people are those who like others. A popular person often moves in many circles, and is accepted by many people. He goes on many outings and prefers to spend his evenings at parties, clubs, or with friends, rather than staying at home and reading a book or watching TV. He often has a good sense of humour and delights in bringing out smiles or making his friends laugh. No one wants to be around a negative, depressed, sad person. You must be positive, fun, happy, and enthusiastic if you want others to respond to you in a positive, receptive, and friendly manner. "If you would be loved, then love." is a simple formula for being popular and well-liked.

If you like others, they will like you. If you want a friend, then you should simply be a friend. If you want to be listened to, then be a listener. If you want attention, give attention. Popular people are sociable; they allow many people into their energy sphere, and in turn are welcomed into the spheres of many other people.

*Most popular people are successful in several areas: in work, in business, in human relationships, and in sports or other outside activities.* Successful people often have strong personalities. They are “winners.” It’s true that everyone likes a winner. No one wants to be around a loser. So someone who has succeeded in his life in one or even several areas is somebody with whom a less successful person can identify. Maybe some of the winner’s ability for success and achievement will “rub off” on him. Even if, in reality, a person is not as successful as he would like to be, he may still act as if he were and dress as if he were in order to become or stay popular. Showing success in dress does not necessarily imply keeping up with the latest fashion. Successful persons feel confident and secure and often these’ feelings allow them to let their individuality flow. They are not afraid to act and look a little different from the average person. But even if success isn’t noticeable on the exterior, it can be perceived in the personality. Successful people exude an air of confidence and security. Somehow, people are drawn into this atmosphere.

It is only popular people who are elected by others to be their representatives, whether as a class president in high school, or the president of a country. **Popular people usually possess many leadership qualities.** They are interesting to listen to and always have ideas and opinions on many subjects. They aren't afraid to say what they feel and what they think, and are willing to put their ideas into practice. They are doers and not just talkers. They show initiative and organizational abilities. They know how to bring people together. Often these are people who have dynamic strong characters and will often take risks and chances in work and personal life. They can make decisions and are independent. Independent people don't become a drain on others, financially or emotionally. In fact, they are a source of energy for those around them. An ideal leader has integrated strong decisive qualities in his nature with those of flexibility and consideration. Such people became popular because they serve as models for others to initiate. Most people need to look up to someone whose nature appears stronger and more secure than theirs. These leadership qualities contribute to a person's popularity.

You may wonder what makes people popular. What are often used in English that describe such people as having charismatic or magnetic personalities. They are called charming, fascinating, attractive, fun, inspiring, or exceptional. ***But most popular people tend to be sociable and successful, and possesses leadership qualities.***

## VOCABULARY REVIEW &amp; SENTENCE CONSTRUCTION

*What Makes a Person Popular*

**ability** : (n) - *power or skill to do something* (ความสามารถ)

**Ex.** -->

1. Man is the only animal that has the **ability** to speak.
2. Ruth has great **ability** as a singer.

**accept** : (v) - *to agree to; to believe to be true* (ยอมรับ)

**Ex.** -->

1. A popular person often moves in many circles, and is **accepted** by many people.
2. His mother **accepted** his reason for being late.

**achievement** : (n) - *something accomplished or achieved (to succeed);  
something gained by effort* (ความสำเร็จ)

**Ex.** -->

1. The invention of the telephone was a great **achievement**.
2. The inventor was rewarded by the Government for his scientific **achievement**.

activity : (n) a thing to do or to be done (กิจกรรม)

**Ex. -->**

1. Outdoor activities are things done outside
2. Classroom **activities** are things done by pupils in the classroom.

**actually** : (adv.) - in fact; really (แท้จริง)

**Ex. -->**

1. He said that he stayed home because he was sick, but **actually** he wanted to watch the baseball game on television.
2. He looks honest, but **actually** he's a rogue.

**admit** : (v) - accept, confess, as true or valid (ยอมรับ)

**Ex. -->**

1. You must **admit** the task to be difficult.
2. He **admitted** having done wrong.

**afraid** : (adj.) - feeling fear; frightened (กลัว)

**Ex. -->**

1. Are **you afraid** of snakes?
2. He is **afraid** to fly in an airplane.

**around** : (adv.) - on every side; in every direction; here and there (โดยรอบ ๆ)

**Ex. -->**

1. I'll be **around** if you should want me.

2. From all **around** we heard the laughter of children.

**atmosphere** : (n) - **the mood** or influence that surrounds a place  
(บรรยากาศ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Our house has a happy **atmosphere** at holiday time.
2. There is an **atmosphere** of peace and calm in the country quite different from the atmosphere of a big city.

**attention** : (n) - **kind or polite acts** (เอาใจใส่)

**Ex. -->**

1. A pretty girl usually receives more **attentions** than a plain girl, finds men more willing to do things for her.
2. The host's many **attentions** made every guest at the party feel welcome.

**attractive** : (adj.) - **having a pleasing quality that attracts (to draw or pull)** people; charming (ดึงดูดใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Mary is a very **attractive** girl.
2. Goods offered at **attraction** prices.

**bring out** : (**idiom**) - reveal (บอกให้รู้)

**Ex.-->**

1. He often has a good sense of humour and delights in **bringing** out smiles or making his friends laugh.

2. The lawyer **brought out** the fact that Smith had not been near the scene of the crime at the time.

**certain** : (adj.) – some particular, known but not name (เฉพาะอย่าง, เฉพาะตน)

Ex.-->

1. **Certain** animals hunt for food at night.
2. **Certain** people already know who won the contest.

**character** : (n) – all the qualities that make a person or thing what it is or make it different from others; what a person really is (คุณลักษณะ)

Ex.-->

1. As he grew older, his **character** changed greatly.
2. You can judge a person's **character** by the way he feels, thinks, and acts.

**characteristic** : (n) – a quality or feature that makes a person or thing what it is or makes it different from others (คุณลักษณะ)

Ex.-->

1. Her kindness is her most outstanding **characteristic**.
2. The ability to fly is a **characteristic** of most birds.

**circle** : (n) – a group of people having the same interests (แวดวงเดียวกัน)

Ex.-->

1. She has a wide **circle** of friends.
2. Most of my **circle** of friends are interested in baseball.

**confident** : (adj.) – having trust or faith; sure (เชื่อมั่น)

**Ex.-->**

1. I am **confident** that our team will win the game.
2. He is **confident** he will succeed.

**consideration** : (n) – thoughtfulness for other people and their feelings;  
careful thought before deciding about something  
(พิจารณาโดยรอบคอบ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Jean shows **consideration** for the neighbours by not playing her record player too loudly.
2. After much **consideration**, my brother decided to study to be a lawyer.

**cultivate** : (v) – to work hard to improve or develop (เสริมสร้าง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Tom tried to **cultivate** good study habits.
2. He **cultivated** his mind by reading good books.

**decision** : (n) – the act or result of making up one's mind (การตัดสินใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. I made a **decision** to accept to job offered.



2. John likes to think carefully about a problem before he makes a **decision**.

**delight** : (n) - great pleasure, joy (ยินดี, ปรีดาปราโมทย์)

Ex.-->

1. Joan beamed with **delight** as she watched the circus.
2. She felt great **delight** at meeting her old friend again.

**depress** : (v) - cause to feel unhappy; to make sad or gloomy (ซึมเศร้า)

Ex.-->

1. The death of their dog **depressed** the whole family.
2. The news **depressed** him.

**describe** : (v) - to give a picture of something in words; tell or write about (อธิบาย)

Ex.-->

1. Words cannot **describe** the beauty of the scene.
2. Please **describe** what you saw.

**drain** : (n) - something that uses up force, time, wealth, etc.; exhausts (สูญเสีย)

Ex.-->

1. Buying the bicycle was a **drain** on my savings.
2. All this extra work was a **drain** on his strength.

**elect** : (v) – to choose by voting; to make a choice; choose; decide

**Ex.-->**

1. The people of the town **elected** a new mayor.
2. He had **elected** to become a lawyer.

**emotional** : (adj.) – having to do with the emotions or feelings a person has (ทางอารมณ์, เจ้าอารมณ์)

**emotionally** : (adv.)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Emotional** problems kept him from doing as good a job as he usually did.
2. My aunt is an **emotional** person who always cries during sad movies.

**energy** : (n) – the capacity for doing work; the strength or eagerness to work or do things (พลัง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Carol has so much **energy** that she gets up early to do exercises.
2. He used his **energy** to work for peace.

**enthusiastic** : (adj.) – full of enthusiasm (a strong feeling of excitement and interest about something) (กระตือรือร้น)

**Ex.-->**

1. A person who is *enthusiastic* is very excited, interested, and eager about something.
2. We were all *enthusiastic* about going on a picnic.

*exceptional* : (adj.) **not ordinary; unusual; extraordinary** (ยอดเยี่ยม, เป็นพิเศษ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Doris is an *exceptional* piano player.
2. Weather that is *exceptional* for June.

*exterior* : (n) - the outer part; outward **look** or manner (บุคลิกภายนอก)

**Ex.-->**

1. Although he has a calm *exterior*, Jack often feels nervous.
2. A gentleman with a rough *exterior is not easily respected*.

*fascinating* : (adj.) - **having** strong **charm or** attraction (สุดเสน่ห์)

**Ex.-->**

What a *fascinating* smile!

*fashion* : (n) - **the new custom or style in dress or behavior** (สมัยนิยม)

**Ex.-->**

1. He always bought the latest *fashion* in men's clothing.
2. Fashions for men's clothes change less frequently than *fashions* for women's clothes.

feeling : (n) – an emotion; the tender or sensitive **part of** a person's nature; a way **of** thinking; opinion; belief (ความรู้สึก, วิถีคิด)

**Ex.-->**

1. Joy, fear, and anger are **feelings**.
2. She hurt his **feelings** when she didn't even say hello to him.

**financially** : (adv.)

**financial** : (adj.) – having to do with money matters (เกี่ยวกับการเงิน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Banks, stock exchanges, and insurance companies handle **financial** dealings.
2. Newspapers often have a **financial** section.

flexible : (adj.) – **easily changed by new** ideas and conditions (of person); adaptable (ยืดหยุ่น)

**Ex.-->**

1. An ideal leader has integrated strong decisive qualities in his nature with these of **flexibility** and consideration.
2. A **flexible** form of government is considered practical.

**formula** : (n) – a set method of doing something (สูตร)

**Ex.-->**

1. There is no real **formula** for making friends.
2. He could give no easy **formula** for success.

**friendly** : (adj.) - *like a friend; showing friendship; not angry or fighting* (เป็นกันเอง, มิตรภาพ)

Ex.-->

1. Those two countries are on **friendly** terms with each other.
2. The teacher was always ready to give her students **friendly** advice whenever they needed it.

**humour** : (n) - *the funny part of something; the ability to make people laugh and to enjoy funny things* (อารมณ์ขัน)

Ex.-->

1. **Humour** is what makes a person laugh.
2. John has a good sense of **humour**.

**identify**: (v) - *to show or prove that a person or thing is who or what you say it is* (ชี้บ่ง)

Ex.-->

1. Mrs. Jones **identified** the robber by the scar on his face.
2. Could you **identify** your umbrella among a hundred others?

**independent** : (adj.) - *free from the control or rule of another or others; separate* (เป็นอิสระ)

Ex.-->

1. Jane moved out of town because she wanted to be **independent** of her family.
2. He does what he wants, **independent** of anyone's wishes.

**individuality** : (n) – *a quality that makes one person or thing different from others* (เฉพาะตัว, เอกลักษณ์)

**Ex.-->**

He expresses his **individuality** in the way he dresses.

**imitate** : (v) – *to try to act or behave like another person does; copy* (เลียนแบบ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Joan **imitates** her older sister by dressing like her.
2. You should **imitate** the virtues of great and good men.

**initiative** : (n) – *the first step in doing or beginning something; the ability or willingness to take a first step in doing or learning something* (ความคิดริเริ่ม)

**Ex.-->**

1. Jean took the **initiative** at the party by introducing herself to the people she didn't know.
2. The lazy boy did not have much **initiative**.

**inspire** : (v) – *to stir the mind, feelings, or imagination of; to cause a person to have a particular thought or feeling* (ดลใจ, ให้กำลังใจ)

**Ex.-->**

1. The senator's speech **inspired** the audience.
2. His success in school **inspired** him with hope for the future.

**keep up with** : (idiom) – remain abreast of (ตามเรื่องทัน)

Ex.-->

1. The newspaper is so large that it is hard to **keep up with** the news.
2. Showing success in dress does not necessarily imply **keeping up with** the latest fashion.

**leadership** : (n) – being a leader : power of leading, the qualities of a leader (ความเป็นผู้นำ)

Ex.-->

Popular people usually possess many **leadership** qualities.

**magnetic** : (adj.) – able to attract (ดึงดูด)

Ex.-->

A **magnetic** personality attract the attention of people.

**manner** : (n) – the way in which something is done; a way of acting or behaving (อาภัพกริยา)

Ex.-->

1. Jack came in and dropped his jacket on the floor in a careless **manner**.
2. The old woman had a warm and friendly **manner**.

**model** : (n) – a person or thing that is a good example of something and is copied (เป็นต้นแบบ)

Ex:-->

1. John is a **model** of a good student.
2. Such people become popular because they serve as **models** for others to imitate.

**noticeable** : (adj.) – easily seen or notice (สังเกตเห็นง่าย)

**Ex.-->**

But even if success isn't **noticeable** on the exterior, it can be perceived in the personality.

**opinion** : (n) – a belief that is based on what a person thinks rather than on what is proved or known to be true (ความคิดเห็น),

**Ex.-->**

1. It is my **opinion** that he will win the race.
2. What is your **opinion** of that movie?

**opposite** : (n) – a person or thing that is completely different from another (ตรงกันข้าม)

**Ex.-->**

1. Summer and winter are **opposites**.
2. White is the **opposite** of black.

**outing** : (n) – a short trip for pleasure (การออกไปเที่ยวแบบเข้าไปเย็นกลับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. All the students enjoyed the school **outing** to the state park.
2. Tom went for an **outing** to the seaside.



**outside** : (adj.) – on the outside; outer (ข้างนอก)

**Ex.-->**

1. All the **outside** doors have locks.
2. Most popular people are successful in several areas; in work, in business, in human relationships, and in sports or other **outside** activities.

**perceive** : (v) – to become aware of thought, seeing, hearing; tasting; smelling or feeling (รับรู้)

**Ex.-->**

1. I could barely **perceive** the figure of a man through the fog.
2. But even if success isn't noticeable on the exterior, it can be **perceived** in the personality.

**personality** : (n) – all of person's characteristic, habits, behavior, and other qualities (บุคลิกภาพ)

**Ex.-->**

1. A person's **personality** makes him or her different from everybody else.
2. Jim is easy to get along with because he has such friendly **personality**.

**popular** : (adj.) – pleasing to very many people; having many friends; of or for the people; accepted by many people; widespread (กว้างขวาง, โด่งดัง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Bill is **popular** at school.
2. Our country has a **popular** government.

**positive** : (adj.) - certain; sure (แน่นอน, เชื่อถือได้)

**Ex.-->**

1. The lawyer gave **positive** proof that the prisoner was guilty.
2. You must be **positive**, fun, happy, and enthusiastic if you want her to respond to you in a positive, receptive, friendly manner.

**possess** : (v) - to have or own (เป็นเจ้าของ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Johnny **possesses** a good singing voice.
2. That man **possesses** great wealth.

**prefer** : (v) - to like better (ชอบมากกว่า)

**Ex.-->**

1. Which would you **prefer**, tea or coffee?
2. I **prefer** to study in the library.

**president** : (n) - a person who is in charge; head (ประธาน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Colleges, universities, governments, and large companies have **presidents**.
2. He was elected **president** of his company.

**quality** : (n) – something that makes a person or thing what it is, degree of excellence (คุณภาพ)

**Ex.-->**

1. George has all the **qualities** of a successful businessman.
2. The market sells meat of the highest **quality**.

**receptive** : (adj.) – quick or ready to receive suggestions, new ideas, etc. (รับรู้)

**Ex.-->**

You must be positive, fun, happy and enthusiastic if you want others to respond to you in a positive, **receptive** and friendly manner.

**recluse** : (n) – a person who lives alone and avoid other people (ผู้สันโดษ)

**reclusive** : (adj.)

**Ex.-->**

Jimmy is difficult to get along with because he is a **reclusive** person.

**relationship** : (n) – the state of being related; connection (ความสัมพันธ์)

**Ex.-->**

There was a **relationship** between the number of times the actors rehearsed the play and how well they performed it.

**remember** : (v) - to bring back *or* recall *to the* mind (จำได้)

**Ex.-->**

1. Do *you remember* your school days?
2. Do *you remember* where you left your jacket?

**representative** : (n) -a person who is chosen to speak or act for others  
(ตัวแทน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The members of Congress are our elected *representatives* in the federal government.
2. The company had sales *representatives* in all the large cities in our state.

**respond** : (v) - *act in answer to, or* because of, the action of another  
(ตอบโต้)

**Ex.-->**

1. When Jack insulted Jill, she *responded* with a kick.
2. You must be positive, fun, happy, and enthusiastic if you want others to *respond* to you in a friendly manner.

**secure** : (adj.) - certain; guaranteed (มั่นคง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Our victory is **secure**.
2. He has a *secure* position in the Civil Service.

**sociable** : (adj.) – liking to be with other people; friendly (สังคมดี  
เข้าไหนเข้าได้)

**Ex.-->**

1. Sarah is a very **sociable** girl and loves to give parties.
2. Popular people are usually very **sociable**.

**spend** : (v) – to pass time (ใช้เวลา)

**Ex.-->**

1. How do you **spend** your leisure?
2. We **spent** the weekend in the country.

**successful** : (adj.) – having success ( a result that has been hoped for)  
(ประสบความสำเร็จ)

**Ex.-->**

1. My aunt is a **successful** lawyer.
2. The writer's book was **successful** and sold many copies.

**ASSIGNMENT 16**

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. ***“Why Are Westerners Less Modest in Their Dress ?”***

***It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.***

***Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***

# The Jotted Outline

## *Why Are Westerners Less Modest in Their Dress ?*

### ***I. Thesis***

*Western people have a more casual and open attitude to dress because they come from colder climates, less populated countries, and their social values are different from an Easterner.*

### ***II. Colder Climates***

- no tropics in Europe or America
- necessary to cover 70% of the year
- heavy clothes necessary 40-80% of the year
- never exposed to sun (short summer)
- tropics give an opportunity to absorb sun
- shoes and long pants are for cold weather

### ***III. Less Crowding***

- in Asia, no physical space
- constant exposure to others
- covering for personal reasons, and not because of the temperature
- westerners have physical space
- buses are less crowded

- more personal privacy for Westerner
- an Asian creates this mentally and in dress (he doesn't want exposure)

#### ***IV. Social Values***

- the west is free
- different morality
- more open behavior and dress
- shyness and modesty not valued highly
- openness to dress does not imply immoral behavior (it could represent open-minded individual)
- westerners like sun-tans (Asian like pale skin)

#### ***V. Conclusion***

***Westerners dress more openly than Asians. Three reasons for this difference in attitude are the climate, the less crowded living situation, and the social values.***



|   |
|---|
| <b><i>Why Are Westerners Less Modest in Their Dress ?</i></b> |
|---|

In the last twenty years, many Westerners have drifted in great number to various Asian countries such as India, Nepal, Thailand, and Indonesia. They come to revel in the sun and bask on the beaches. And some problems and “*culture clashes*” have occurred as a result. Many of these problems occur as a result of different attitudes and customs of dress. Asians often think that Westerners, particularly women, are very immodest in their dress. But they don’t understand the Western situation. ***Western people have a more casual and open attitude to dress because they come from colder climates, less crowded countries, and their social values are very different from an Easterner.***

***There are no tropical places in Europe.*** Some places are temperate, of course, in comparison with extreme climates like Scandinavia or Canada. In America, a few states are very hot, but still not completely, tropical. Thus, the majority of people traveling spend perhaps 70% of the year with arms, legs, and feet covered. 40–80% of the year they must cover even the neck, hands, and head because of the intense cold. They never feel the sun or their skin. They can’t even sit outside. The short summers are greatly treasured in northern countries. It is a chance to expose their bodies to the sun, or feel the grass under their feet. When they arrive in a tropical country, they go crazy soaking up the sunshine. It is such a treat for them. “*Why wear shoes and socks and long pants if the temperature doesn’t require it?*” they wonder, for them, the behavior of an Asian is very illogical.

***Physical space, of the lack of it, in most Asian countries, is a cause of much of the modesty in dress.*** People are constantly exposed to each other in great numbers. People are always pressed together in overcrowded buses. Many people sleep together in small houses and often whole families live in one room. They cover themselves more for personal reasons than climatic reasons. Space is more available to a Westerner. They are used to houses with many rooms. There is less overcrowding and overpopulation in the West. Mass transit is better and buses are crowded only at certain hours. This allows much more personal privacy for the individual. A Westerner has physical space. An average Asian doesn't, so he must create this space mentally, and in his dress. Dressing modestly is a personal protection. Due to lack of space, an Asian already gets much attention and exposure to others. He doesn't want to encourage more.

***In every society dress reflects the social and cultural values. Most western societies are free societies.*** This doesn't mean that they don't have any morality. It is only different. Western people are physically more open in their behavior and their dress. Many Asian people misunderstand and misinterpret this behavior. Shyness and modesty are not prized personal attributes for an average Westerner. And he doesn't necessarily associate covering the body with morality. In fact, openness in dress is often seen as something positive and representing a free-thinking and open-minded individual. And most Westerners just don't place any importance on knees or shoulders and don't think of covering or not covering them. Asians also are concerned with light skin.

Exposure to the sun means that you must work outdoors. The rich can stay inside. In the west, to have dark skin shows that you are rich enough, to get out of the cold for a while!

Most westerners traveling in Asia are tourists, and not living a regular working life. Of course their dress is more casual than when at home. But even in the West, their dress is more casual and open than that of an Asian. *Three reasons for this difference in attitude are the climate, the less crowded living situation, and the social values.*

### Why Are Westerners Less Modest in Their Dress ?

**arrive** : (v) - *to come to a place* (มาถึง)

**Ex.-->**

1. We will **arrive** in Florida at midnight.
2. I **arrived** at school on time.

**associate** : (v) - *to connect in one's mind; to join as a friend or partner*  
(มีความสัมพันธ์, คบหาสมาคม)

**Ex.-->**

1. I always associate ice cream and cake with birthday parties.
2. My brother **associates** mostly with boys who like sports as much as he does.

**attention** : (n) - *careful watching or listening; notice or consideration*  
(ความสนใจ, เอาใจใส่, การพิจารณา)

**Ex.-->**

1. Pollution of our rivers and lakes calls for immediate **attention**.
2. He called my **attention** to the airplane flying high above us.

**attitude** : (n) - *a way of thinking, acting, or feeling toward someone or something; position of the body in relation to a person or thing* (กริยาท่าทาง, อาการ, การวางตัว)

**Ex.-->**

1. He took a sympathetic **attitude** toward my problems.
2. The madman assumed a threatening **attitude**.

**available** : (adj.) - obtainable; ready *for use* or service; that *can be* gotten, had, *or used* (หาได้, หาง่าย, เท่าที่จะทำได้)

**Ex.-->**

1. This shirt is **available** in several different colors.
2. Use every **available** remedy to save the child.

**average** : (n) the number produced by adding two *or* more quantities and then dividing *by the* number of *quantities* added; *the* usual amount or kind (จำนวนเฉลี่ย)

**Ex:-->**

1. This year's rainfall came close to the **average**.
2. The **average** of 2,4,6 and 8 is 5.

**bask** : (v) - to lie in and *enjoy a pleasant* warmth (อาบแดด, รับรัศมี)

**Ex.-->**

1. The children **basked** in the sun on the beach.
2. The boys **basked** in front of the campfire.

**beach** : (n) - *the land along the edge of an ocean* (หาดทราย)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **beach** is covered with sand or pebbles.
2. We hunted for different kinds of shells along the **beach**.

***behaviour : (n) - a way of behaving or acting; manners (good or bad)***

(ความประพฤติ, พฤติกรรม)

***Ex.-->***

1. The children's ***behaviour*** was good.
2. The science class studied the ***behaviour*** of the grasshopper.

***casual : (adj.) - done or happening without serious thought or planning***

(ไม่มีกฎเกณฑ์ที่แน่นอน, โดยบังเอิญ)

***Ex.-->***

1. Our neighbours sometimes make a ***casual*** visit to our house without calling up beforehand.
2. It was not a business appointment, just a ***casual*** meeting with a friend.

***certain : (adj.) - sure; positive (แน่ใจ, โดยแน่นอน)***

***Ex.-->***

1. I am ***certain*** that my answer is correct because I checked it.
2. Spring is ***certain*** to follow winter.

***chance : (n) - a good or favorable opportunity (โอกาส, หนทาง)***

***Ex.-->***

1. The prisoner saw the ***chance*** to escape.
2. She has a ***chance*** to visit Europe this summer.

**clash** : (n) – a strong disagreement (โต้แย้ง, ไม่เห็นพ้องด้วย)  
 – conflict (ปะทะกัน, เป็นปฏิปักษ์กัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. There was a **clash** between the members of my family about where we'd go for our vacation.
2. There is a **clash** of views about the election.
3. Don't let the supposed cultural **clash** of East and West keep you from having foreign friends.

**climate** : (n) – the average weather conditions of a place or region  
 – an atmosphere or condition of a given situation.  
 (อากาศตามฤดูกาล, ภูมิประเทศ)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Climate** includes average temperature, humidity, and wind conditions.
2. The **climate** in the mountains was cool and dry in the summer.
3. The rising unrest in certain conditions has produced a **climate** of tension in the world.

**comparison** : (n) – the finding out of the likenesses and the differences between persons or things; a likeness; similarity  
 (การเปรียบเทียบ, เทียบเคียง)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **comparison** of the two teams seems to show that Saturday's game will be close.

2. There is no **comparison** between those two cars when it comes to speed.

**completely** : (adv.) – thoroughly; perfectly; wholly (ทำสำเร็จ, สมบูรณ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. Anne was **completely** exhausted after skiing all day.
2. Jill was being **completely** honest when she told the teacher that she had not tripped Pam on purpose.

**concern** : (v) – have relation to; effect; be of importance to (เกี่ยวข้องกับ, เกี่ยวข้องกับ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Don't trouble about things that don't **concern** you.
2. Does this **concern** you?

**constantly** : (adv.) – continuously, frequently (ไม่รู้จักหยุด, เสมอ)

**Ex.-->**

1. He is **constantly** being asked for advice.
2. People are **constantly** exposed to each other in great numbers.

**country**: (n) – an area of land; region; an area of land that has boundaries and a government that is shared by all the people; nation (ประเทศชาติ, ชนบท)

**Ex.-->**

1. We have a summer cabin in mountain **country**.



2. The United States and Canada are **countries**.

**covering** : (n) - *anything that covers or protects, as a leafy covering*  
(เครื่องคลุม, เครื่องปกปิด)

**Ex.-->**

1. My new car has a **covering** of dirt.
2. **Covering** letter is a letter sent with a document or with goods typically explaining the contents.

**create** : (v) - *produce as a work of thought or imagination; bring into; being made; form* (สร้างสรรค์, ประดิษฐ์ขึ้น)

**Ex.-->**

1. Several new jobs were **created**.
2. The artist **created** many beautiful pictures.

**crowd** : (n) - *a large number of people gathered together* (ฝูงชน)

**Ex.-->**

1. There was a **crowd** of people waiting to get into the theater.
2. A **crowd** collected to hear the speaker.
3. **Crowds** can be either good or bad, depending on their mood.
4. An angering crowd is called a mob.

**cultural** : (adj.) - *having to do with culture* (ในทางวัฒนธรรม)

**Ex.-->**

1. We read a book about the **cultural** history of ancient Greece.

2. In every society dress reflects the social and **cultural** values.

**culture** : (n) – the arts, beliefs; and customs that make up a way of life for a group of people at a certain time; the improvement and development of something (วัฒนธรรม, การเพาะพืชพันธุ์)

Ex.-->

1. He was studying the **culture** of the North.
2. Gymnastics are a part of physical **culture**.

**custom** : (n) – a way of acting that has become accepted by many people

(ขนบธรรมเนียม, ประเพณี)

– the usual way that something is done; habit (สิ่งที่ทำเป็นประจำ, ปกตินิสัย)

Ex.-->

1. Decorating trees and giving presents at Christmas is a **custom** shared by many people in this country.
2. It is my **custom** to walk to school every morning.
3. Basically, social **customs** and attitudes, as well as people themselves, are all the same.

**different** : (adj.) – totally unlike; not the same (แตกต่างกัน, แยกออกจากกัน)

Ex.-->

1. His ideas were **different** from mine.
2. It rained two **different** times this afternoon.

**dress** : (n) – a garment for a woman or girl; clothing or a particular style of clothing (เครื่องแต่งตัว)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **dress** usually looks like a blouse and skirt that have been sewn together.
2. The guests at the ball were all wearing normal **dress**.

**encourage** : (v) – to give courage, hope, or confidence to; urge on (ช่วยเหลือ, ให้กำลังใจ, สนับสนุน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The coach **encouraged** Jack to try out for the swimming team.
2. The teacher's praise **encouraged** the boy to study.

**expose** : (v) – to leave open or without protection (ตาก, ฝั่ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. It is a chance to **expose** their bodies to the sun.
2. The child was **exposed** to the sun's rays too long.

**extreme** : (adj.) – going beyond what is usual; very great (ผิดธรรมดา อย่างที่สุด, หนักที่สุด, อย่างยิ่ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. He uses **extreme** care when driving in the rain.
2. Vic and Mike were in **extreme** danger when they were caught in the rock slide.

*free* : (adj.) - having one's liberty; not under another's control; not troubled **by** something (อิสรภาพ)

**Ex.-->**

1. America became a *free* country in 1776 when it fought off English rule.
2. My aunt lives a life that is *free* from care or worry.
3. Supposedly "free" sex, in the West, is a reaction to super conservative attitudes about love.

*get out of* : (**idiom**) - **avoid; escape (from)** - (หลีกเลี่ยง, รอดพ้น)

**Ex.-->**

1. I wish I could *get out of* (point to) that wedding.
2. You can't *get out of* your responsibility when you're assigned officially.
3. It is difficult to *get out of* dangerous situations, once we are in them.

*grass* : (**n**) - **any of a large number of plants that have narrow leaves called blades** (หญ้า)

**Ex.-->**

1. Grasses grow in lawns, fields, pastures.
2. Horses, cows, and sheep eat grass.

*great* : (**adj.**) - **very large in size, number, or amount** (ใหญ่โต, มาก, จำนวนมาก)

**Ex.-->**

1. A **great** crowd gathered to welcome the astronauts to the city.
2. Eight million people live in the **great** city.

**greatly** : (adv.) - very much; highly (อย่างใหญ่หลวง, เป็นอันมาก)

**Ex.-->**

1. We **greatly** appreciated the beautiful gift you give us.
2. Many television commercials are **greatly** exaggerated.

**illogical** : (adj.) - without logic (ปราศจากเหตุผล)

**Ex:-->**

“Why wear shoes and socks and long pants if the temperature doesn’t require it?” they wonder, for them, the behavior of an Asian is very **illogical**.

**importance** : (n) - the state of being important (having great value or meaning) (ความสำคัญ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Rain is of great **importance** to farmers since crops can’t grow without water.
2. The president is a man of **importance**.

**individual** : (n) without logic (บุคลิกลักษณะเฉพาะบุคคล)

**Ex.-->**

1. He is a strange **individual**.
2. She is a happy **individual**.

**immodest : (adj.) - lacking in modesty; indecent or indelicate**

(ไม่สงวนเสีียม. ไม่เรียบร้อย)

**Ex.-->**

1. Asians often think that Westerners, particularly women, are very **immodest** in their dress.
2. That singers dress is an **immodest** dress.

**inside : (adv. of place) - on, in or forward the inside; within; indoors**

(ข้างใน, ด้านใน, ภายใน)

**Ex.-->**

1. She opened the door of the house and stepped **inside**.
2. The children played **inside** because of the rain.

**intense : (adj.) - high in degree (อย่างแรง, แรงกล้า)**

**Ex.-->**

1. The **intense** heat exhausted him.
2. The heat from the iron was so **intense** that it burned a hole in the cloth.
3. People are thought to be **intense** because they are difficult to understand.

**lack : (n) - the needing of something; something needed (ความขาดแคลน)**

**Ex.-->**

1. The **lack** of rain caused the farmer's crop to fail.
2. The farmers worried about the **lack** of rain.

**light** : (adj.) – the pale in color (ผิว [ขาว])

**Ex.**-->

1. She has a **light** complexion and sunburns easily.
2. Asians also are concerned with **light** skin.

**majority** : (n) – the large number or part of something (ส่วนใหญ่)  
– more than half (จำนวนมากกว่าครึ่ง)

**Ex.**-->

1. The **majority** of the students voted for Martin for class president.
2. To win an election, a candidate must receive the **majority** of the votes.

**mental** : (v) – done by or having to do with the mind (ทางใจ, ในใจ)

**mentally**: (adv.)

**Ex.**-->

1. Learning to speak is one stage of a child's **mental** development.
2. He had a great **mental** ability.

**misinterpret** : (v) – give a wrong interpretation to; make a wrong inference from (แปลความหมายผิด)

**Ex.**-->

1. He **misinterpreted** her silence as giving consent.

2. Many Asian people misunderstand and **misinterpret** the westerner's.
3. It is **very** easy to **misinterpret** when one is unaware of all the fact's behavior.

**moral : (adj.) - good and honest in behavior** and character (มีศีลธรรมดี)

**- having to do with what is right and wrong**

(ความรู้สึกละอายใจและชอบ)

Ex.-->

1. He is a **moral** man.
2. Whether or not to report that his friend had cheated was a **moral** question he had to answer for himself.
3. The **moral** behavior rises from right behavior and right understanding.

**neck : (n) - part of the body that connects the head and the shoulders**

(คอ)

Ex.-->

40-50% of the year, they must cover even the **neck**, hands, and head because of the intense cold.

**occur : (v) - to take place; happen; to be found; appear** (เกิดขึ้น, มีขึ้น)

Ex.-->

1. The fire **occurred** in the middle of the night.
2. The accident **occurred** on Friday.



**outdoors** : (adv.) - not in house or other building; out under the sky  
(นอกบ้าน, กลางแจ้ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. We are **outdoors** under a tree.
2. Farm workers spend most of their time **outdoors**.

**outside** : (adv.of place) - on or to the outside; outdoors (ข้างนอก)

**Ex.-->**

1. Do you want to go **outside** for some fresh air?
2. The children played **outside** all day.

**overcrowded** : (adj.) - too crowded (แน่นเกินไป)

**Ex:-->**

1. People are always pressed together in **overcrowded** Buses.
2. There was **overcrowded** people waiting to get into the theatre.
3. The solution too **overcrowding** is to populate less densely populated areas.

**pants** : (n) - clothes for the part of the body below the waist (กางเกง)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Pants** are divided to that they cover each leg separately.
2. **Pants** usually reach from the waist to the ankles.

**particularly** : (adv.) - in a particular (having to do with some person or thing) manner (โดยเฉพาะ, เป็นพิเศษ)

**Ex.-->**

1. His good humour was **particularly** noticeable.
2. I **particularly** mentioned that point.

**place** : (n) - a part of space (สถานที่)

- location (ที่ตั้ง, ทำเล)

- area (พื้นที่)

Ex.-->

1. We visited many interesting **places** on our trip to Chicago.
2. The **place** where I hit my elbow is still sore.

**population** : - the number of people who live in a place; people  
(ประชาชน)

Ex.-->

1. What is the **population** of your city?
2. The entire **population** was forced to leave the town because of the flood.
3. A great influence to the **population** of a country is birthrate.

**positive** : (adj.) - certain; sure (แน่นอน, แน่ใจ)

Ex.-->

1. I am **positive** that I just saw Ann walk by outside.
2. Can you be **positive** about what you saw?

**press** : (v) - to push forward; go on (รีบร้อน, รุกเร้า, ยัดเยียด)

Ex.-->

1. Dad **pressed** through the crowd of people.
2. People are always **pressed** together in overcrowded buses.

**prize** : (v) – to think very highly of; value highly (มีราคาสูง)

**Ex.-->**

1. They **prize** Susan's advice about gardening because she knows a great deal about it.
2. There is one stamp in his collection that he **prized** more than the others.

**problem**: (n) – a question or condition that is difficult to deal with or that has not been solved (ปัญหา)

**Ex.-->**

1. There were ten **problems** on the arithmetic test.
2. Rising prices are a serious **problem** in our country today.

**protection** : (n) – the keeping of someone or something from harm; a person or thing that protects (การป้องกัน)

**Ex.-->**

1. The urgent government policy is going to promulgate the new law for the **protection** of wild animals.
2. Susan put on a lotion as a **protection** against sunburn.

**reason** : (n) – a cause of motive; a statement that explains something; excuse (เหตุผล, ข้ออ้างเหตุผล, ความรู้สึกเหตุผล)

**Ex.-->**

1. There is no **reason** to doubt her word.
2. I wonder what **reason** he had for getting so angry.
3. A **reason** unsupported by fact is considered to be an excuse.

**reflect** : (v) - to turn or throw back; to give back an image of  
something (แสง) สะท้อน, เป็นเงา)

**Ex.-->**

1. The sand at the beach **reflects** the light and heat of the sun.
2. The water or the lake **reflects** the trees along its banks.

**regular** : (adj.) - normal; usual (มีกฎเกณฑ์, สม่ำเสมอ)

**Ex.-->**

1. Our **regular** teacher was absent today.
2. Six o'clock is our **regular** dinner time.
3. **Regular** eating habits are conducive of good health.

**represent** : (v) - to be a sign or symbol of; stand for (เป็นตัวแทน,  
แสดงให้เห็น)

**Ex.-->**

1. The dots on the map **represents** towns and cities.
2. The letters of the alphabet **represent** the sounds of our language.
3. Garuda, a mythical bird, **represents** royal Indonesian Airways.

**result** : (n) – something that happens or is caused by something else  
(ก่อผล, เป็นผล)

**Ex.-->**

1. His bicycle accident was a **result** of carelessness.
2. He won the race as a **result** of his greater speed.

**revel** : (v) – make merry; have a gay; lively time (รื่นเริง, มีนเมา, สนุกสนาน)

**Ex.-->**

1. They **revel** until dawn.
2. They **reveled** all night long.

**shyness** : (n) – bashfulness (ขวยเขิน, ขี้อาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. **Shyness** and modesty are not prized personal attributes for an average Westerner.
2. The boy's **shyness** was caused by the fact that he was not used to playing with other children.

**situation** : (n) – a condition or state of affairs (ตั้งอยู่, ตำแหน่ง, สถานการณ์)

**Ex.-->**

1. Ted found himself in a difficult **situation** when his car ran out of gas on a deserted country road.
2. He is in a difficult **situation**.

**skin** : (n) – the butter covering of the body of a person (ผิวหนัง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The **skin** protects the organs inside the body from disease or injury.
2. Her **skin** was smooth and soft.

**soak** : (v) – to take in (ซึมผ่าน)  
 – absorb (ดูด, ซึม)

**Ex.-->**

1. The sponge **soaked** up the spilled juice.
2. The oil **soaked** through the paper bag.

**social** : (adj.) – having to do with people as a group (เกี่ยวข้องกับหมู่ชน)  
 – having to do with people being together in a friendly way (การอยู่รวมกัน, เกี่ยวกับการสังคม)

**Ex.-->**

1. Geography and history are **social** studies.
2. We paid a **social** visit to our neighbor.

**summer** : (n) – the warmest season of the year (ฤดูที่ร้อนที่สุดของปี)  
 – the season of the year that comes between spring and autumn (ฤดูที่อยู่ระหว่างฤดูใบไม้ผลิกับฤดูใบไม้ร่วง)

**Ex.-->**

1. I went to Phuket last **summer**.
2. They have gone to the mountains for the **summer**.

**temperate** : (adj.) – not extreme or excessive (พอดี, ไม่มากไม่น้อย)

– mild (ไม่หนาวจัด)

– not too hot and not too cold (อากาศพอสบาย)

**Ex.-->**

1. We live in a **temperate** climate, where the weather is not usually very hot or very cold.
2. Most areas of the United States have a **temperate** climate.

**tourist** : (n) – one who travels for pleasure or education rather than business (นักท่องเที่ยว)

**Ex.-->**

1. Many **tourists** stop to see the tower of London.
2. Most Westerners traveling in Asia are **tourists**.

**transit** : (n) – the passage from one place to another over or through;  
the process of carrying things or persons or of being carried (การขนส่ง)

**Ex.-->**

1. The points of **transit** from one country to the other are carefully guarded.
2. That city has several systems of **transit**.

**treasure** : (n) – outer things of great value (ของมีค่า, ทรัพย์สมบัติ)  
– something or someone greatly loved or appreciated (สะสม, สงวนไว้ด้วยความรักใคร่)

**Ex.-->**

1. The short summer are greatly **treasured** in northern countries.
2. Her children were her **treasures**.

**tropical** : (adj.) - having to do with or found in the tropics (ของเมืองร้อน, ในเมืองร้อน)

**Ex.-->**

1. Orchids are **tropical** plants.
2. Bright-colored birds fed on the **tropical** fruit.

**value** : (n) - importance (สำคัญ)

- worth (คุณค่า, มีราคา)
- appreciate (พอใจ, นิยม)

**Ex.-->**

1. Bob's friendship is of great **value** to Jack.
2. His work was a great **value** to the business.

**various** : (adj.) - different - (ต่าง ๆ หลายชนิด)

- of many kind - (หลายอย่าง)
- several or many - (นานาประการ)

**Ex.-->**

1. She tried on **various** dresses before selecting one.
2. **Various** people asked for you at the meeting.



**ASSIGNMENT 17**

**Directions:** Write a complete analysis argumentative composition from this given topic. ***“Why Is Nature Like a Woman ?”***

***It is more practical and logical to do your own outline either the jotted or the sentence before starting to write your unified composition.***

***Your composition must consist of not less than three support paragraphs.***

**Why Is Nature Like a Woman ?**

Nature has been called Mother for many years. *She produces and nurtures many things as her children, teaches them how to live and help themselves and preserves her original beauty.*

*Nature produces and cares for her children.* A woman may feel that she is not complete until she mothers a child or two. No one has ever conceived of a mother without children, including Nature. Nature produced all the animals and plants in the world as her own children, feeding and protecting them. Nature without these many things would be unimaginable.

*Nature teaches her children how to live and grow.* After bearing many animals and plants into the world, like a true, good mother, she cannot simply abandon them. Nature teaches her young to grow and to find their own food, to prepare them for adulthood and the event that their parents can no longer support them. Women also teach and raise their children, if they truly desire and love them.

*Nature remains beautiful and pure, in spite of Man.* Nature looks after her image and her beauty like a woman caring for her skin and body. Despite years of land development and encroachment. Nature

remains still very beautiful and pure. Many of her original features such as \*mountains still stand and present a majestic, untamed imaged to the viewer.

Nature and women seem to be the same thing for reasons such as childbearing and personal maintenance. **Certain feminine characteristics such as these *may* be *the* reasons why men have called Nature “Mother. ”**

## VOCABULARY REVIEW &amp; STRUCTURE CONSTRUCTION

## Why Is Nature Like a Woman ?

**abandon** : (v) - to discard; *throw away* (เลิกทิ้ง)

Ex:-->

1. Many a lover **abandoned** for an other.
2. If he ever **abandons** you. then come to me.
3. We found the suspects' car, obviously **abandoned**, at the intersection.

**adult** : (n) - a full-grown *person or animal* (ผู้ใหญ่)

Ex..-

1. **Adults** are alert and responsible.
2. Nature prepares her children to be capable **adults**.
3. Thai family and society fail to teach children how to be **adults**.

**bear** : (v) - *to produce; to deliver; to tolerate* (คลอด, ให้ผล, อดทน)

Ex.-->

1. To **bear** fruit requires at least one month.
2. **Bearing** a child is a woman's joy...and suffering.
3. I found his insults hard to **bear**.

**conceive** : (v) - think (of, about); produce (children) (นึกได้, ให้กำเนิด)

**Ex.--**

1. Who would have **conceived** that Dr. Henry Jeckle was Edward Hyde.
2. He **conceived** of the plan himself.
3. The company was **conceived** of by five persons.

**encroach** : (v) - invade (บุกรุก, ละเมิด)

**Ex.-->**

1. Land developers frequently **encroach** into public parks.
2. Frequent **encroachment** by grazing animals causes deserts.
3. The sea is gradually **encroaching** on the land.

**features** : (n) - details; characteristics; qualities (ลักษณะ, คุณสมบัติ)

**Ex-->**

1. A woman's physical **features** attract more than her mind.
2. Lakes and mountains are Nature's most attractive **features**.
3. A man's most attractive **feature**, nowadays, is income.

**feminine (female)** : (adj.) - of a woman or the female sex (ของผู้หญิง)

**Ex.-->**

1. Softness, gentleness and care are **feminine** characteristics.
2. One **female** characteristic men should keep is "caring."

3. Worrying about her children is a *feminine* characteristics in mothers; desire to have children is a characteristic of women generally.

***maintenance* : (n) - maintaining or being maintained (การบำรุงรักษา)**

**Ex.-->**

1. “Car Maintenance” is offered in this semester.
2. John has to pay *maintenance* to his ex-wife. (= alimony)
3. *Maintenance* for the beach house is very high.

***majesty*: (n) ~ monarch; royalty; impressive dignity (กษัตริย์, ความโอ่อ่า)**

**Ex.-->**

1. Nature’s *majesty* exceeds that of humans.
2. The *majesty* of Natures can be seen in her mountains.
3. Their *majesties* will celebrate their sixteenth anniversary in Australia.

***nurture* : (v) - feed **and** raise (เลี้ยงดู)**

**Ex.--**

1. All mothers require to *nurture* their children.
2. Mammals *nurture* by feeding milk.
3. Birds *nurture* their young by feeding by mouth.

***origin* : (n) -source; **beginning** (ที่มา, แหล่ง, แรกเริ่ม)**

***original* : (adj.)**

**Ex.--**

1. Woman and nature both have **original** beauty.
2. An **original** painting is very expensive.
3. The **origin** of Western man was Western Europe.

**tame** : (v) make tame or manageable (ทำให้เชื่องได้)

(adj.) - *not wild or fierce* (ไม่ดุร้าย)

**Ex.-->**

1. Nature makes men think of **untamed** forests and jungles.
2. In truth, “wild” animals are **tame** since birth.
3. “Taming” a young woman requires patience.

**unimaginable** : (adj.) -*unthinkable, inconceivable* (จำไม่ได้, นึกไม่ถึง)

**Ex.--**

1. Hyde's crimes were **unimaginable**.
2. That life could have existed on Mars is still **unimaginable**.
3. I desire a woman of **unimaginable** beauty.

# **UNIT III**

## **COMPARISON & CONTRAST ARGUMENTATIVE COMPOSITION WRITING**